00031437

00031437

Digitized with financial assistance from

HT Parekh FOUNDATION

An Initiative by HDFC

WITH YOU, RIGHT THROUGH

on 28 December, 2018

THE SPANISH STORY OF THE ARMADA

ETC

THE SPANISH STORY OF THE ARMADA

AND OTHER ESSAYS

β 789

BY

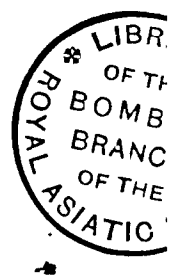
JAMES ANTHONY FROUDE

31437
ac

ἐγὼ δὲ ἴδιος ἐν κοινῷ σταλείς
μῆτίν τε γαρύων παλαιγόνων
πόλεμόν τ' ἐν ἡρωΐαις ἀρεταῖσιν
οὐ ψεύσομ' ἀμφὶ Κορίνθῳ

Pindar, *Olymp.* Carm. XIII.

TT. 1 15



LONDON
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
1892

All rights reserved

Gol
3.3.04
F80/spa
31437

PREFACE

After completing my History of England from the fall of Wolsey to the defeat of the Spanish Armada, I had intended to pursue the story of the sixteenth century, and to write the lives of Charles the Fifth and Philip the Second. To them had fallen the task of confronting the storm which had broken over the rest of Europe. The opening of the Archives of Spain, Paris, and Vienna had for the first time made it possible to see the position in which they found themselves, to understand their characters and to weigh impartially their conduct in a situation so extraordinary. My own partial researches had already shown me that the prevailing opinions about these two princes required wide correction, and I thought that I could not better employ the remainder of my life than on an enquiry so profoundly interesting. To regard the Emperor, to regard Philip merely as reactionary bigots, is as unjust as it is uninstructive. They had to deal with a world in arms, with a condition in which society was disintegrated by a universal spiritual revolt, of which the outcome was still utterly uncertain, and at such a crisis the wisest statesmen must have necessarily been divided on the conduct which duty required of them.

The labour of investigation would have been very great, and the years which I could have devoted to it would at most have been none too many for so ambitious an enterprise. I was obliged by circumstances to lay my purpose aside until it was too late to begin; and it will fall to others, perhaps better qualified than myself, to execute what, if successfully performed, will be the best service that can now be rendered to modern history. Of my own attempts nothing has come, or now can come, save a few separate studies, such as the story of Queen Catherine's Divorce as related by Charles the Fifth's ambassadors, with the slight essays which form half this present volume, and have been already published in different periodicals.

The Divorce of Catherine has been brought out in a separate form as a supplement to my History of England. The essays I reproduce because they were carefully written, and I hope may have some interest to historical students. The defeat of the Armada transferred the Empire of the Sea from Spain to England, and the Spanish account of it cannot be read without curiosity and even sympathy. The 'Relacion' of Antonio Perez has, for three centuries, been the chief authority for the private character of Philip the Second. Philip was once titular King of England. I have thought it worth while to examine the character of his accuser. The Life of Saint Teresa exhibits the spiritual enthusiasm of the Spanish nation in its noblest form.

The subjects which occupy the remainder of the volume have no connection with the sixteenth century. Others, however, besides myself will have observed, at least with

curiosity, the majestic figures which lie on the floor of the Antechapel in the Temple Church, and will have asked themselves who and what these men could have been when they lived on earth in flesh and blood. The publication of the 'Procès des Templiers' by M. Michelet provides an answer to the question.

Sir George Lewis said that life would be very tolerable if it was not for its amusements. Life, however, without any amusements would be tedious, and books given wholly to serious matters are tedious also. Authors, like school boys, require holidays, and the sketches of the Norway Fjords are the records of two summer excursions into those delightful regions, as a guest in the yacht of a friend. Our graver writings are the reflections of our studies. Some taste of the flavour of our enjoyments may be preserved in the diaries of our idleness.

CONTENTS

PAGE

THE SPANISH STORY OF THE ARMADA. 1

ANTONIO PEREZ: AN UNSOLVED HISTORICAL RIDDLE . 86

SAINT TERESA 148

THE TEMPLARS 208

THE NORWAY FJORDS 259

NORWAY ONCE MORE 299

THE SPANISH STORY OF THE ARMADA

I

THE fate of the great expedition sent by Philip the Second to restore the Papal authority in England has been related often in prose and verse. It is the most dramatic incident in our national history, and the materials for a faithful account of it in the contemporary narratives are unusually excellent. The English nature on that occasion was seen at its very best. The days had not yet come of inflated self-praise; and the spirit which produces actions of real merit is usually simple in the description of such actions. Good wine needs no bush; the finest jewels need least a gaudy setting; and as the newspaper correspondent was not yet born, and the men who did the fighting wrote also the reports, the same fine and modest temper is equally seen in both.

Necessarily, however, Englishmen could only tell what they themselves had seen, and the other side of the story has been left untold. The Spanish historians have never attempted to minimise the magnitude of their disaster, but they have left the official records to sleep in the shades of their public offices, and what the Spanish commanders might have themselves to say of their defeat and its causes has been left hitherto unprinted. I discovered myself at Simancas the narrative of the Accountant-General of the Fleet, Don Pedro Coco Calderon, and made use of it in my own history. But Don Pedro's account showed only

how much more remained to be discovered, of which I myself could find no record either in print or MS.

The defect has now been supplied by the industry and patriotism of an officer in the present Spanish Navy, who has brought together a collection of letters and documents bearing on the subject which are signally curious and interesting.[1] Captain Fernandez Duro deserves grateful thanks and recognition, as enabling us for the first time really to understand what took place. But more than that, he reproduces the spirit and genius of the time; he enables us to see, face to face, the De Valdez, the Recaldes, the Oquendos, the De Leyvas, who had hitherto been only names to us. The 'Iliad' would lose half its interest if we knew only Agamemnon and Achilles, and knew nothing of Priam and Hector. The five days' battle in the English Channel in August 1588 was fought out between men on both sides of a signally gallant and noble nature; and when the asperities of theology shall have mellowed down at last, Spanish and English authorities together will furnish materials for a great epic poem.

Until that happy and still far-distant time shall arrive, we must appropriate and take up into the story Captain Duro's contribution. With innocent necromancy he calls the dead out of their graves, and makes them play their drama over again. With his assistance we will turn to the city of Lisbon on April 25 of the *Annus Mirabilis*. The preparations were then all but completed for the invasion of England and the overthrow of the Protestant heresy. From all parts of Catholic Europe the prayers of the faithful had ascended for more than a year in a stream of passionate entreaty that God would arise and make His power known. Masses had been said day after day on fifty thousand altars; and devout monks and nuns had

[1] *La Armada Invencible.* Por el Capitan Fernandez Duro.

bruised their knees in midnight watches on the chapel pavements. The event so long hoped for was to come at last. On that day the consecrated standard was to be presented in state to the Commander-in-Chief of the Expedition. Catholics had collected from every corner of the world: Spanish and Italian, French and Irish, English and German, owning a common nationality in the Church. The Portuguese alone of Catholic nations looked on in indifference. Portugal had been recently annexed by force to Spain. The wound was still bleeding, and even religion failed to unite the nobles and people in common cause with their conquerors. But Lisbon had ceased to be a Portuguese city. Philip dealt with it as he pleased, and the Church of Portugal, at least, on this occasion, was at Philip's disposition.

There was something of real piety in what was going on; and there was much of the artificial emotion which bore the same relation to piety which the enthusiasm of the Knight of La Mancha bore to true chivalry. Philip himself in certain aspects of his character was not unlike Don Quixote. He believed that he was divinely commissioned to extirpate the dragons and monsters of heresy. As the adventure with the enchanted horse had been specially reserved for Don Quixote, so the 'Enterprise of England,' in the inflated language of the time, was said to have been reserved for Philip; and as analogies are apt to complete themselves, the short, good-humoured, and entirely incapable Medina Sidonia, who had been selected for Commander-in-Chief, had a certain resemblance to Sancho. The Duke of Medina had no ambition for such adventures; he would have greatly preferred staying at home, and only consented to take the command out of a certain dog-like obedience to his master. The representatives of the imaginary powers had been called in to bring him to

accept the dangerous responsibility. A pious hermit told him that he had been instructed by the Almighty to promise him victory. The Prioress of the Annunciata, Maria de la Visitacion, who had received the five wounds and was punished afterwards as a detected impostor, had seen Santiago and two angels smiting Drake and his unbelieving comrades, and she assured the Duke of glory in both worlds if he went. The Duke's experience of English Admirals had been, so far, not glorious to him at all. He had been in command at Cadiz a year before when the English fleet sailed up the harbour, burnt eighteen large ships, and went off unfought with, taking six more away with them. All Spain had cried shame and had called the Duke a coward, but Philip had refused to be displeased, and had deliberately chosen him for an undertaking far more arduous than the defence of a provincial port. On this April 25 he was to receive his commission, with the standard under which he was to go into action, and the Catholic Church was to celebrate the occasion with its imposing splendours and imperious solemnities.

The Armada lay in the Tagus waiting the completion of the ceremony. It was the most powerful armament which had ever been collected in modern Europe, a hundred and thirty ships—great galleons from a thousand to thirteen hundred tons; galliasses rowed by three hundred slaves, carrying fifty guns; galleys almost as formidable, and other vessels, the best appointed which Spain and Italy could produce. They carried nine thousand seamen, seasoned mariners who had served in all parts of the world, and seventeen thousand soldiers, who were to join the Prince of Parma and assist in the conquest of England. Besides them were some hundreds of nobles and gentlemen who, with their servants and retinues, had volunteer d for the new crusade, gallant, high-spirited youths, quite ready to fight

with Satan himself in the cause of Spain and Holy Church. In them all was a fine profession of enthusiasm—qualified, indeed, among the seamen by a demand for wages in advance, and a tendency to desert when they received them. But a regiment of priests dispersed through the various squadrons kept alive in most the sense that they were going on the most glorious expedition ever undertaken by man.

The standard which was to be presented itself indicated the sacred character of the war. Into the Royal Arms of Spain there had been introduced as supporters on one side Christ on the Cross, on the other the Virgin mother; and on the scroll below was written: 'Exsurge Deus et vindica causam tuam,' 'Arise, O Lord, and avenge thy cause.' 'Philip, by the grace of God King of Castille, of Leon, of Aragon, the Two Sicilies, Jerusalem, Portugal, Navarre, Granada, Toledo, Valencia, Gallicia, Majorca, Sardinia, Cordova, Corsica, Murcia, Jaen, Algarves, Algesiras, Gibraltar, the Canary Islands, the East and West Indies, the Isles and Continents of the Ocean; Archduke of Austria, Duke of Burgundy, of Brabant and Milan, Count of Hapsburgh, Count of Flanders, Tirol, and Barcelona; Lord of Biscay and Molina,' &c.; the monarch, in short, whose name was swathed in these innumerable titles, had determined to commit the sacred banner to his well-beloved Don Alonzo de Guzman, surnamed El Bueno, or the Good, and under its folds to sweep the ocean clear of the piratical squadrons of the English Queen. The scene was the great metropolitan church of Lisbon, the Iglesia Major. It was six o'clock in the morning; streets and squares were lined with troops who had been landed from the ships. The King was represented by his nephew, the Cardinal Archduke, who was Viceroy of Portugal. The Viceroy rode out of the Palace with the Duke on his right hand, followed by the gentlemen adventurers of the expedition in their splendid dresses. At

the church they were received by the Archbishop. The standard was placed on the altar. Mass was sung. The Viceroy then led the Duke up the altar steps, lifted a fold of the standard and placed it in his hands, while, as the signal was passed outside, the ships in the river and the troops in the streets fired a salute—'una pequeña salva,' a small one, for powder was scarce and there was none to waste. The scene was not impressive; and the effect was frittered away in a complexity of details. The Archbishop took the Holy Sacrament and passed out of the church, followed by a stream of monks and secular clergy. The Archduke and the newly-made Admiral went after them, the standard being borne by the Duke's cousin, Don Luis of Cordova, who was to accompany him to England. In this order they crossed the great square to the Dominican Convent, where the scene in the Iglesia Major was repeated. The Dominicans received the procession at the door. The standard was again laid on the altar, this time by the Duke of Medina himself, as if to signify the consecration of his own person to the service of the beings whose forms were embroidered upon it. The religious part of the transaction finished, they returned to the Palace, and stood on the marble stairs while the troops fired a second volley. The men were then marched to their boats, with an eye on them to see that none deserted, and His Royal Highness and the Captain-General of the Ocean, as the Duke was now entitled, went in to breakfast.

The presentation had wanted dignity and perhaps seriousness. There was no spontaneous enthusiasm. The Portuguese aristocracy were pointedly absent, and the effect was rather of some artificial display got up by the clergy and the Government. And yet the expedition of which this scene was the preliminary had for sixty years been the dream of Catholic piety, and the discharge at last of a duty

with which the Spanish nation appeared to be peculiarly charged. The Reformation in England had commenced with the divorce of a Spanish Princess. Half the English nation had been on Catherine's side and had invited Philip's father to send troops to help them to maintain her. As the quarrel deepened, and England became the stronghold of heresy, the English Catholics, the Popes, the clergy universally had entreated Charles, and Philip after him, to strike at the heart of the mischief and take a step which if successful, would end the Protestant rebellion and give peace to Europe. The great Emperor and Philip too had listened reluctantly. Rulers responsible for the administration of kingdoms do not willingly encourage subjects in rebellion, even under the plea of religion. The divorce of Catherine had been an affront to Charles the Fifth and to Spain, yet it was not held to be a sufficient ground for war, and Philip had resisted for a quarter of a century the supplications of the suffering saints to deliver them from the tyranny of Elizabeth. It was an age of revolt against established authority. New ideas, new obligations of duty were shaking mankind. Obedience to God was held as superior to obedience to man; while each man was forming for himself his own conception of what God required of him. The intellect of Europe was outgrowing its creed. Part of the world had discovered that doctrines and practices which had lasted for fifteen hundred years were false and idolatrous. The other and larger part called the dissentients rebels and children of the Devil, and set to work to burn and kill them. At such times kings and princes have enough to do to maintain order in their own dominions, and even when they are of opposite sides have a common interest in maintaining the principle of authority. Nor when the Pope himself spoke on the Catholic side were Catholic princes completely obedient. For the

Pope's pretensions to deprive kings and dispose of kingdoms were only believed in by the clergy. No secular sovereign in Europe admitted a right which reduced him to the position of a Pope's vassal. Philip held that he sufficiently discharged his own duties in repressing heresy among his own subjects without interfering with his neighbours. Elizabeth was as little inclined to help Dutch and French and Scotch Calvinists. Yet the power of princes, even in the sixteenth century, was limited, and it rested after all on the goodwill of their own people. Common sympathies bound Catholics to Catholics and Protestants to Protestants, and every country in Europe became a caldron of intrigue and conspiracy. Catholics disclaimed allegiance to Protestant sovereigns, Protestants in Catholic countries looked to their fellow-religionists elsewhere to save them from stake and sword, and thus between all parties, in one form or another, there were perpetual collisions, which the forbearance of statesmen alone prevented from breaking out into universal war.

Complete forbearance was not possible. Community of creed was a real bond which could not be ignored, nor in the general uncertainty could princes afford to reject absolutely and entirely the overtures made to them by each other's subjects. When they could not assist they were obliged to humour and encourage. Charles the Fifth refused to go to war to enforce the sentence of Rome upon Henry the Eighth, but he allowed his ambassadors to thank and stimulate Catherine's English friends. Philip was honestly unwilling to draw the sword against his sister-in-law, Elizabeth; but he was the secular head of Catholic Christendom, bound to the maintenance of the faith. He had been titular King of England, and to him the English Catholics naturally looked as their protector. He had to permit his De Quadras and his Mendozas to intrigue with

disaffection, to organise rebellion, and, if other means failed, to encourage the Queen's assassination. To kill dangerous or mischievous individuals was held permissible as an alternative for war, or as a means of ending disturbance. It was approved of even by Sir Thomas More in his Utopia. William the Silent was murdered in the Catholic interest. Henri Quatre was murdered in the Catholic interest, and anyone who would do the same to the English Jezebel would be counted to have done good service. Elizabeth had to defend herself with such resources as she possessed. She could not afford to demand open satisfaction; but she could send secret help to the Prince of Orange; she could allow her privateers to seize Spanish treasures on the high seas or plunder Philip's West Indian cities. She could execute the traitorous priests who were found teaching rebellion in England. Philip in return could let the Inquisition burn English sailors as heretics when they could catch them. And thus the two nations had drifted on, still nominally at peace, and each unwilling to declare open war; but peace each year had become more difficult to preserve, and Philip was driven on by the necessities of things to some open and decided action. The fate of the Reformation in Europe turned on the event of a conflict between Spain and England. Were England conquered and recovered to the Papacy, it was believed universally that first the Low Countries and then Germany would be obliged to submit.

Several times a Catholic invasion of England had been distinctly contemplated. The Duke of Alva was to have tried it. Don John of Austria was to have tried it. The Duke of Guise was to have tried it. The nearest and latest occasion had been after the Conquest of Portugal and the great defeat of the French at the Azores in 1583. The Spanish Navy was then in splendid condition, excited by a

brilliant victory, and led by an officer of real distinction, Alonzo de Bazan, Marques de Santa Cruz. A few English privateers had been in the defeated fleet at the Battle of Terceira; and Santa Cruz, with the other naval commanders, was eager to follow up his success and avenge the insults which had been offered for so many years to the Spanish flag by the English corsairs. France, like all Northern Europe, was torn into factions. The Valois princes were Liberal and anti-Spanish. The House of Guise was fanatically Catholic, and too powerful for the Crown to control. Santa Cruz was a diplomatist as well as a seaman. He had his correspondents in England. In Guise he had a friend and confederate. The plan of action had been secretly arranged. One of the many plots was formed for the murder of Elizabeth. Santa Cruz and the Spanish Navy were to hold the Channel. Guise was to cross under their protection and land an army in Sussex. The Catholics were to rise, set free Mary Stuart, and make her Queen. This was the scheme. The fleet was ready. Guise was ready; and only Philip's permission was waited for. Santa Cruz was a rough old sailor, turned of seventy, who meant what he said and spoke his mind plainly. Like his countrymen generally, he was tired of seeing his master for ever halting on his leaden foot (*pié de plomo*); and on August 9, 1583, while still at the Azores, he wrote to stimulate him to follow up his success by a still more splendid achievement. Philip was now master of the Portuguese Empire. He (Santa Cruz) was prepared, if allowed, to add England to his dominions. The Low Countries would then surrender, and the Jezebel who had wrought so much evil in the world would meet her deserts.

Now was the time. The troops were ready, the fleet was in high condition. Philip talked of expense and difficulty. If difficulty was an objection, the bold admiral said

that nothing grand could ever be achieved; and for money, great princes could find money if they wished. The King should have faith in God, whose work he would be doing; and if he was himself permitted to try, he promised that he would have as good success as in his other enterprises.

Charles the Fifth, among his other legacies to his son, had left him instructions to distrust France and to preserve the English alliance. The passionate Catholics had assured Philip over and over again that the way to keep England was to restore the faith. But plot after plot had failed, Elizabeth was still sovereign, and Catholic conspiracies so far had only brought their leaders to the scaffold. Mary Stuart was a true believer, but she was herself half a Frenchwoman, and Guise's father had defeated Philip's father at Metz, and Guise and Mary masters of France and England both was a perilous possibility. Philip did not assent; he did not refuse. He thanked Santa Cruz for his zeal, but said that he must still wait a little and watch. His waiting did not serve to clear his way. Elizabeth discovered what had been designed for her, and as a return Sir Francis Drake sacked St. Domingo and Carthagena. More than that, she had sent open help to his insurgent provinces, and had taken charge, with the consent of the Hollanders, of Flushing and Brill. Santa Cruz could not but admire the daring of Drake and the genius of the English Queen. They were acting while his own master was asleep. He tried again to rouse him. The Queen, he said, had made herself a name in the world. She had enriched her own subjects out of Spanish spoil. In a single month they had taken a million and a half of ducats. Defensive war was always a failure. Once more the opportunity was his own. France was paralysed, and Elizabeth, though strong abroad, was weak at home, through the disaffection of the Catholics. To delay longer would be to see

England grow into a power which he would be unable to deal with. Spain would decline, and would lose in mere money more than four times the cost of war.[1]

This time Philip listened more seriously. Before, he had been invited to act with the Duke of Guise, and Guise was to have the spoils. Now, at any rate, the lead in the campaign was to be his own. He bade Santa Cruz send him a plan of operations and a calculation in detail of the ships and stores which would be required. He made him Lord High Admiral, commissioned him to collect squadrons at Cadiz and Lisbon, take them to sea, and act against the English as he saw occasion. Santa Cruz would probably have been allowed his way to do what he pleased in the following year but for a new complication, which threw Philip again into perplexity. The object of any enterprise led by Santa Cruz would have been the execution of the Bull of Pope Pius, the dethronement of Elizabeth, and the transference of the crown to Mary Stuart, who, if placed on the throne by Spanish arms alone, might be relied on to be true to Spanish interests. Wearied out with Mary's perpetual plots, Elizabeth, when Santa Cruz's preparations were far advanced, sent her to the scaffold, and the blow of the axe which ended her disconcerted every arrangement which had been made. There was no longer a Catholic successor in England to whom the crown could go on Elizabeth's deposition, and it was useless to send an army to conquer the country till some purpose could be formed for disposing of it afterwards. Philip had been called King of England once. He was of the blood of the House of Lancaster. He thought, naturally, that if he was to do the work, to him the prize should belong. Unfortunately, the rest of the world claimed a voice in the matter. France would certainly be hostile. The English Catholics were

[1] Santa Cruz to Philip the Second, January 13, 1586.

divided. The Pope himself, when consulted, refused his assent. As Pope Sextus the Fifth, he was bound to desire the reduction of a rebellious island; as an Italian prince, he had no wish to see another wealthy kingdom added to the enormous empire of Spain. Mary Stuart's son was natural heir. He was a Protestant, but gratitude might convert him. At any rate, Philip was not to take Elizabeth's place. Sextus was to have given a million crowns to the cost of the armament; he did not directly withdraw his promise, but he haggled with the Spanish Ambassador at the Holy See. He affected to doubt the possibility of Philip's success, and even his personal sincerity. He declined to advance a ducat till a Spanish army was actually on English soil. The Prince of Parma, who was to cross from Flanders and conduct the campaign in England itself, was diffident, if not unwilling; and Philip had to feel that even the successful occupation of London might prove the beginning of greater troubles. He had been driven forward himself against his inclination. The chief movers in the enterprise, those who had fed the fire of religious animosity through Europe, and prevented a rational arrangement between the Spanish and English nations, were the Society of Jesus, those members of it especially who had been bred at Oxford in the Anglican Church, and hated it with the frenzy of renegades. From them came the endless conspiracies which Spain was forced to countenance, and the consequent severities of the English Government, which they shrieked in Philip's ears; and Philip, half a bigot and half a cautious statesman, wavered between two policies till fate decided for him. Both on Philip's part and on Elizabeth's part there was a desire for peace if peace could be had. Philip was weary of the long struggle in the Low Countries, which threatened to be endless if Elizabeth supported it. Elizabeth herself wished to be left in quiet,

relieved of the necessity of supporting insurgent Protestants and hanging traitorous priests. An arrangement was possible, based on principles of general toleration.

The Pope was right in not wholly trusting Philip. The Spanish King was willing to agree that England should remain Protestant if England wished it, provided the Catholics were allowed the free exercise of their own religion, and provided Elizabeth would call in her privateers, surrender to him the towns which she held in Holland, and abandon her alliance with the Dutch States. Elizabeth was perfectly ready to tolerate Catholic worship if the Catholics would cease their plots against her and Spain would cease to encourage them. It was true that Flushing and Brill had been trusted to her charge by the States, and that if she withdrew her garrison she was bound in honour to replace them in the States' hands. But she regarded the revolt of the Low Countries as only justified by the atrocities of the Blood Council and the Inquisition. If she could secure for the Dutch Confederation the same toleration which she was willing herself to concede to the English Catholics, she might feel her honour to be acquitted sufficiently, and might properly surrender to Philip towns which really were his own. Here only, so far as the two sovereigns were concerned, the difficulty lay. Philip held himself bound by duty to allow no liberty of religion among his own subjects. On the other hand, if peace was made the Spanish garrisons were to be withdrawn from the Low Countries; the Executive Government would be left in the hands of the States themselves, who could be as tolerant practically as they pleased. On these terms it was certain that a general pacification was within reach. The Prince of Parma strongly advised it. Philip himself wished for it. Half Elizabeth's Council recommended it, and she herself wished for it. Unless Catholics and Protestants

intended to fight till one or the other was exterminated, they must come to some such terms at last; and if at last, why not at once? With this purpose a conference was being held at Ostend between Elizabeth's and Parma's commissioners. The terms were rational. The principal parties, it is now possible to see—even Philip himself—were sincere about it. How long the terms of such a peace would have lasted, with the theological furnace at such a heat, may be fairly questioned. Bigotry and freedom of thought had two centuries of battle still before them till it could be seen which was to prevail. But an arrangement might then have been come to at Ostend, in the winter of 1587–8, which would have lasted Philip's and Elizabeth's lifetime, could either party have trusted the other. In both countries there was a fighting party and a peace party. In England it was said that the negotiations were a fraud, designed only to induce Elizabeth to relax her preparations for defence. In Spain it was urged that the larger and more menacing the force which could be collected, the more inclined Elizabeth would be to listen to reason; while Elizabeth had to show on her part that frightened she was not, and that if Philip preferred war she had no objection. The bolder her bearing, the more likely she would be to secure fair terms for the Hollanders.

The preparations at Cadiz and Lisbon were no secret. All Europe was talking of the enormous armament which Spain was preparing, and which Santa Cruz was to convoy to the English Channel. Both the Tagus and Cadiz Harbour were reported to be crowded with ships, though as yet unprovided with crews for them. With some misgivings, but in one of her bolder moments, the Queen in the Spring of 1587 allowed Drake to take a flying squadron with him down the Spanish coast. She hung about his neck a second in command to limit his movements; but

Drake took his own way, leaving his vice-admiral to go home and complain. He sailed into Cadiz Harbour, burnt eighteen galleons which were lying there, and, remaining leisurely till he had finished his work, sailed away, intending to repeat the operation at Lisbon. It might have been done with the same ease. The English squadron lay at the mouth of the river within sight of Santa Cruz, and the great admiral had to sit still and fume, unable to go out and meet him *por falta de gente*—for want of sailors to man his galleons. Drake might have gone in and burnt them all, and would have done it had not Elizabeth felt that he had accomplished enough and that the negotiations would be broken off if he worked more destruction. He had singed the King's beard, as he called it; and the King, though patient of affronts, was moved to a passing emotion. Seamen and soldiers were hurried down to the Tagus. Orders were sent to the Admiral to put to sea at once and chase the English off the shore. But Philip, too, on his side was afraid of Santa Cruz's too great audacity. He, too, did not wish for a collision which might make peace impossible. Another order followed. The fleet was to stay where it was and to continue its preparations. It was to wait till the next spring, when the enterprise should be undertaken in earnest if the peace conference at Ostend should fail in finding a conclusion.

Thus the winter drove through. Peace perhaps was not really possible, however sincerely the high contracting parties might themselves desire it. Public opinion in Spain would have compelled Philip to leave the conqueror of Terceira in command of the expedition. Santa Cruz would have sailed in March for the English Channel, supported by officers whom he had himself trained; and, although the Armada might still have failed, history would have had another tale to tell of its exploits and its fate. But a visible

coldness had grown up between the King and the Admiral. Philip, like many men of small minds raised into great positions, had supreme confidence in his own powers of management. He chose to regulate everything, to the diet and daily habits of every sailor and soldier on board. He intended to direct and limit the action of the Armada even when out and gone to its work. He had settled perhaps in his own mind that, since he could not himself be King of England, the happiest result for him would be to leave Elizabeth where she was, reduced to the condition of his vassal, which she would become if she consented to his terms; and with the presence of an overpowering fleet in the Channel, a moderate but not too excessive use of force, an avoidance of extreme and violent measures, which would make the strife internecine and make an arrangement hopeless, he conceived that he could bring Elizabeth to her knees. For such a purpose Santa Cruz was not the most promising instrument; he required someone of more malleable material who would obey his own instructions, and would not be led either by his own ambition or the enthusiasm and daring of his officers into desperate adventures. It was probably, therefore, rather to his relief than regret that in February, when the Armada was almost ready to sail, the old Admiral died at Lisbon. Santa Cruz was seventy-three years old. He had seen fifty years of service. Spanish tradition, mourning at the fatal consequence, said afterwards that he had been broken-hearted at the King's hesitation. Anxiety for the honour of his country might have worn out a younger man. He came to his end, and with him went the only chance of a successful issue of the expedition. He was proud of his country, which he saw that Philip was degrading. The invasion of England had been his dream for years, and he had correspondents of his own in England and Ireland. He was the

ablest seaman that Spain possessed, and had studied long the problems with which he would have had to deal. Doubtless he had left men behind among those who had served under him who could have taken his place, and have done almost as well. But Philip had determined that, since the experiment was to be made, he would himself control it from his room in the Escurial, and in his choice of Santa Cruz's successor he showed that naval capacity and patriotic enthusiasm were the last qualities for which he was looking.

Don Alonzo de Guzman, Duke of Medina Sidonia, was the richest peer in Spain. He was now thirty-eight years old, and his experience as a public man was limited to his failure to defend Cadiz against Drake. He was a short, broad-shouldered, olive-complexioned man, said to be a good rider; but, if his wife was to be believed, he was of all men in Spain the least fitted to be trusted with the conduct of any critical undertaking. The Duchess, Doña Aña de Mendoza, was the daughter of Philip's Minister, Ruy Gomez, and of the celebrated Princess of Eboli, whom later scandal called Philip's mistress, and whose attractions were supposed to have influenced Philip in favour of her son-in-law. Royal scandals are dreary subjects. When they are once uttered the stain is indelible, for everyone likes to believe them. The only contemporary witness for the amours of Philip and the Princess of Eboli is Antonio Perez, who, by his own confession, was a scoundrel who deserved the gallows. Something is known at last of the history of the lady. If there was a woman in Spain whom Philip detested, it was the wife of Ruy Gomez. If there was a man whom the Princess despised, it was the watery-blooded King. An intrigue between a wild cat of the mountain and a narrow-minded, conscientious sheep-dog would be about as probable as a love-affair between Philip and the

Princess of Eboli; and at the time of her son-in-law's appointment she was locked up in a castle in defiant disgrace. The Duke had been married to her daughter when he was twenty-two and his bride was eleven, and Doña Aña after sixteen years' experience of him, had observed to her friends that he was well enough in his own house among persons who did not know what he was; but that if he was employed on business of State the world would discover to its cost his real character. That such a man should have been chosen to succeed Alonzo de Bazan astonished everyone. A commander of Gold, it was said, was taking the place of a commander of Iron. The choice was known to Santa Cruz while he still breathed, and did not comfort him in his departure.

The most astonished of all, when he learnt the honour which was intended for him, was the Duke himself, and he drew a picture of his own incapacity as simple as Sancho's when appointed to govern his island.

'My health is bad,' he wrote to Philip's secretary, 'and from my small experience of the water I know that I am always sea-sick. I have no money which I can spare. I owe a million ducats, and I have not a real to spend on my outfit. The expedition is on such a scale and the object is of such high importance that the person at the head of it ought to understand navigation and sea-fighting, and I know nothing of either. I have not one of those essential qualifications. I have no acquaintances among the officers who are to serve under me. Santa Cruz had information about the state of things in England; I have none. Were I competent otherwise, I should have to act in the dark by the opinion of others, and I cannot tell to whom I may trust. The Adelantado of Castile would do better than I. Our Lord would help him, for he is a good Christian and has fought in naval battles. If you send me, depend

upon it, I shall have a bad account to render of my trust.'[1]

The Duchess, perhaps, guided her husband's hand when he wrote so faithful an account of himself. But his vanity was flattered. Philip persisted that he must go. He and only he would answer the purpose in view, so he allowed himself to be persuaded.

'Since your Majesty still desires it, after my confession of incompetence,' he wrote to Philip, 'I will try to deserve your confidence. As I shall be doing God's work, I may hope that He will help me.'

Philip gratefully replied: 'You are sacrificing yourself for God's service and mine. I am so anxious, that if I was less occupied at home I would accompany the fleet myself, and I should be certain that all would go well. Take heart; you have now an opportunity of showing the extraordinary qualities which God, the author of all good, has been pleased to bestow upon you. Happen what may, I charge myself with the care of your children. If you fail, you fail; but the cause being the cause of God, you will not fail.'

Thus the Duke was to command the Armada and to sail at the earliest possible moment, for the Commissioners were sitting at Ostend, and his presence in the Channel was of pressing consequence. Santa Cruz besides had fixed on the end of March as the latest date for the departure, on account of the north winds which later in the season blow down the coast of Portugal. The Duke at the time of his nomination was at his house at San Lucar He was directed to repair at once to Lisbon, where his co mission would reach him. An experienced but caution Admiral, Don Diego Flores De Valdez, was assigned

[1] M S donia to Secretary Idiaquez, Feb. 16, 1588. Duro, vol. i. p. 414

to him as nautical adviser, and Philip proceeded to inflict upon him a series of instructions and advice as wise and foolish as those with which Don Quixote furnished his squire. Every day brought fresh letters as suggestions rose in what Philip called his mind. Nothing was too trifling for his notice, nothing was to be left to the Duke's discretion which could possibly be provided for. In a secret despatch to the Prince of Parma, the King revealed alike his expectations and his wishes. He trusted that the appearance of the Armada and some moderate victory over the English fleet would force Elizabeth to an agreement. If the Catholic religion could be tolerated in England, and if Flushing and Brill were given up to him, he said that he was prepared to be satisfied. To Medina Sidonia he reported as his latest advice from England that the Queen was inclining to the treaty, but was dissuaded by Leicester and Walsingham, and he gave him a list of the English forces which he might expect to meet, which was tolerably accurate and far inferior to his own.

So far Philip wrote like a responsible and sensible prince, but the smallest thing and the largest seemed to occupy him equally. He directed the Duke to provide himself with competent Channel pilots, as if this was a point which might be overlooked. He laid down regulations for the health of the crews, he fixed himself the allowances of biscuit and wine, salt fish and bacon. Beyond all, he charged the Duke to attend to their morals. They were in the service of the Lord, and the Lord must not be offended by the faults of his instruments. The clergy throughout Spain were praying for them and would continue to pray, but soldiers and sailors must do their part and live like Christians. They must not swear; they must not gamble, which led to swearing. If they used low language God would be displeased. Every man before he embarked must

confess and commend himself to the Lord. Especially and pre-eminently, loose women must be kept away, and if any member of the expedition fell into the *pecado nefando* he must be chastised to the example of the rest. This was well enough also, but from morals the King went next to naval details, of which he could know nothing. He had heard, he said, that the gentlemen adventurers wanted state-rooms and private berths. It would encumber the ships, and the Duke was not to allow it. As the Duke was ignorant of navigation, the King held himself competent to instruct. He was to make straight for the English Channel, advance to the North Foreland, and put himself in communication with Parma. If foul weather came and the ships were scattered, they were to collect again, first at Finisterre, and then at the Scilly Isles. In the Channel he must keep on the English side, because the water was deeper there. Elizabeth's fleet, Philip understood, was divided, part being under Drake at Plymouth, and part in the Straits of Dover. If the Duke fell in with Drake he was to take no notice of him unless he was attacked, and was to keep on his course. If he found the two squadrons united, he would still be in superior force and might join battle, being careful to keep to windward.

There were limits even to Philip's confidence in his ability to guide. He admitted that he could not direct the Duke specifically how to form the ships for an engagement. Time and opportunity would have to determine. 'Only,' he said, 'omit no advantage and so handle the fleet that one part shall support another. The enemy will try to fight at a distance with his guns. You will endeavour to close. You will observe that their practice is to shoot low into the hulls rather than into the rigging. You will find how to deal with this. Keep your vessels together, allow none to stray or go in advance. Do not let them hurry in

pursuit of prizes after a victory. This fault has often caused disaster both on sea and land. Conquer first, and then you will have spoil enough. The Council of War will order the distribution of it. What I am now saying implies that a battle will have to be fought; but if the enemy can be got rid of without an action, so much the better. The effect will be produced without loss to yourself. Should the Prince be able to cross, you will remain with the Armada at the mouth of the Thames, lending such assistance as you can. Consult with the Prince, and land none of your forces without his approval. Remember that your only business is to fight at sea. Differences between leaders are injurious, and always to be avoided. I am confident that you will co-operate cordially with the Prince as my service demands; but I must charge you to follow these injunctions of mine strictly according to the exact words. I have similarly directed the Prince on his own conduct, and if you two acting together can succeed in your undertaking, there will be honour to spare for both of you. You will remain at the Thames' mouth till the work is done. You may then, if the Prince approves, take in hand Ireland, in which case you will leave your Spanish troops with him and exchange them for Germans and Italians. You will be careful in what you spend. You know how costly the Armada has been to me. You will also see that I am not cheated in the muster rolls, and that the provisions are sound and sufficient. You will watch the conduct of the officers and keep them attentive to their duties. This is all which occurs to me at present. I must leave the rest to your own care and prudence, and for any further advices which I may have to send you.'[1]

[1] Philip the Second to the Duke of Medina Sidonia, April 1. Duro, vol. ii. pp. 5–13.

Much of all this was no doubt reasonable and true. But Generals chosen to conduct great enterprises do not require to be taught the elements of their duties. That Philip thought it necessary to write all these details was characteristic both of himself and of the Duke. But it was characteristic of Philip also, that he had not made up his mind what the fleet was after all to do, or what he himself wished it to do. The first set of instructions was followed by a second, addressed both to the Duke and the Prince of Parma. The original purpose was that the fleet should make its way to the North Foreland. Parma was to use its presence in the Channel, to cross at once with the army, advance to London and take possession of the Government, where, in conjunction with Cardinal Allen and the Catholic Nobles, he was to restore the authority of the Roman Church. This, however, implied that the English squadrons should have been first destroyed, or driven off the sea into their harbours. It was possible, as Philip foresaw, that the victory at sea might be less complete. He assumed that the English would be overmatched, but they were bold and skilful, and, even if defeated, might be left in a condition to be troublesome. The passage of the army might in that case be dangerous; and Parma was left on his own responsibility to resume the negotiations at Ostend. Medina Sidonia was to gain and fortify the Isle of Wight, and the presence of the Armada in the Solent was to be used as an instrument to extort favourable terms from Elizabeth's Government. It would be no longer possible to demand the restoration of Catholicism in England, but the free exercise of the Catholic religion was to be insisted on. As the first point, and for the sake of the toleration of the Catholics, Philip would be willing to abandon his claim to compensation for the plundering expeditions of Francis Drake. The next con-

dition was to be the restoration to the King of the towns which Elizabeth held in the Low Countries. It was possible that, before consenting, the Queen would demand the same liberty of religion for the Protestants of the Low Countries which she was required to grant to her own Catholics. To this, however, Parma was in no case to consent. The English might argue that the Huguenots were tolerated under the Edicts in France. Parma was to answer that the example was not to the point, that the King, at any rate, would not give way. The Isle of Wight would be in his own hands. The fleet would be safe in the Solent. Other fortresses could be seized along the coast, and Elizabeth would be forced to consent to a peace, under which she would be virtually reduced into the position of Philip's vassal.

Accidents, however, might happen, and the Prince of Parma also was perplexed with minute conditional instructions.

Disaster it is evident that Philip did not anticipate. Something less than complete success he probably did anticipate, and on the whole might prefer it. Satisfied with having provided for all contingencies, he was now only anxious to see the Armada on its way. The nuns and hermits, meanwhile, had removed the alarms of Medina Sidonia, had convinced him that God could not neglect a business in which He was so peculiarly concerned, and that, in the fine language of theological knight-errantry, the service which he was to execute had been specially reserved by Providence for the King to achieve.[1]

Such thoughts and such experiences were doubtless in-

[1] 'Y que lo tiene guardado á V. Md. para que por su mano y con su gran zelo y christiandad, se reduzca aquel Regno al gremio y obediencia de su Iglesia.' Medina Sidonia to Philip, April 11.

dications of a high-wrought frame of mind; but men may dwell too exclusively on the conviction that God is on their side, and perhaps forget that God will not be found there if they neglect to do their own parts. While the priests were praying and the King and the Duke were calculating on the Divine assistance, they were omitting, all of them, the most obvious precautions by which moderate success could be looked for. Santa Cruz had reported that the fleet was almost ready to sail. The stores of provisions had been laid in while he was still alive, and the water-casks had been filled. But after his death there was no responsible person left in Lisbon to see to anything. Great naval expeditions were nothing new in Spain. The West Indies and Mexico and Peru had not been conquered by men in their sleep; and what ships and ships' crews required for dangerous voyages was as well understood at Lisbon and Cadiz as in any harbour in the world. But the Armada was surrounded by a halo of devout imagination which seemed to paralyse all ordinary sense. It was to have sailed in March, but, even to the inexperienced eye of Medina Sidonia when he arrived at his command, the inadequacy of the preparations was too obvious. The casks of salt meat were found to be putrefying; the water in the tanks had not been renewed, and had stood for weeks, growing foul and poisonous under the hot Lisbon sun. Spare rope, spare spars, spare anchors—all were deficient. The powder-supply was short. The balls were short. The contractors had cheated as audaciously as if they had been mere heretics, and the soldiers and mariners so little liked the look of things that they were deserting in hundreds, while the muster-masters drew pay for the full numbers and kept it. Instead of sailing in March, as he had been ordered, the Duke was obliged to send to Madrid a long list of indispensable necessaries, without which he could not

sail at all. Nothing had been attended to save the state of the men's souls, about which the King had been so peculiarly anxious. They at any rate had been sent to confession, had received each his ticket certifying that he had been absolved and had duly commended himself to the Lord. The loose women had been sent away, the cards and dice prohibited, the moral instructions punctually complied with. All the rest had been left to chance and villainy. The short powder-supply was irremediable. The Duke purchased a few casks from merchant ships, but no more was to be had. For the rest, the King wrote letters, and the Duke, according to his own account, worked like a slave, and the worst defects were concealed if not supplied. Not, however, till the end of April were the conditions advanced sufficiently for the presentation of the standard, and even then the squadron from Andalusia had not arrived.

All was finished at last, or at any rate seemed so. The six squadrons were assembled under their respective commanders. Men and officers were on board, and sailing orders, addressed to every member of the expedition, were sent round, in the Duke's name, to the several ships, which, remembering the fate to which all these men were being consigned by their crusading enthusiasm, we cannot read without emotion.

'From highest to lowest you are to understand the object of our expedition, which is to recover countries to the Church now oppressed by the enemies of the true faith. I therefore beseech you to remember your calling, so that God may be with us in what we do. I charge you, one and all, to abstain from profane oaths dishonouring to the names of our Lord, our Lady, and the Saints. All personal quarrels are to be suspended while the expedition lasts, and for a month after it is completed. Neglect of this will be held as treason. Each morning at sunrise the ship boys,

according to custom, shall sing "Good Morrow" at the foot of the mainmast,[1] and at sunset the "Ave Maria." Since bad weather may interrupt the communications, the watchword is laid down for each day in the week:—Sunday, Jesus; the days succeeding, the Holy Ghost, the Holy Trinity, Santiago, the Angels, All Saints, and our Lady. At sea, every evening, each ship shall pass with a salute under the lee of the Commander-in-Chief, and shall follow at night the light which he will carry in his stern.'

So, as it were, singing its own dirge, the doomed Armada went upon its way, to encounter the arms and the genius of the new era, unequally matched with unbelievers. On May 14 it dropped down the river to Belem, and lay there waiting for a wind. A brief account may here be given of its composition and its chief leaders. The fleet consisted of a hundred and thirty ships. Seven of them were over a thousand tons and sixty-seven over five hundred. They carried two thousand five hundred guns, chiefly small, however—four, six, and nine-pounders. Spanish seamen understood little of gunnery. Their art in their sea-battles was to close and grapple and trust to their strength and courage in hand-to-hand fighting. Large for the time as the galleons were, they were still overcrowded. Soldiers, sailors, officers, volunteers, priests, surgeons, galley slaves, amounted, according to the returns, to nearly thirty thousand men. The soldiers were the finest in Europe; the seamen old trained hands, who had learnt their trade under Santa Cruz. They were divided into six squadrons, each with its Vice-Admiral and Capitana or flag-ship. The Duke carried his standard in the San Martin, of the squadron of Portugal, the finest vessel in the service, and, as the Spaniards thought, in the world. The other five, of Biscay,

[1] 'Los pajes, segun es costumbre, daran los buenos dias al pié del mástil major.'

Castile, Andalusia, Guypuscoa, and the Levant, were led by distinguished officers. There was but one commander in the fleet entirely ignorant of his duties, though he, unfortunately, was Commander-in-Chief.

As the names of these officers recur frequently in the account of what followed, some description may be given of each.

The Vice-Admiral of the Biscay squadron was Juan Martinez de Recalde, a native of Bilbao, an old, battered sea-warrior, who had fought and served in all parts of the ocean. He knew Ireland; he knew the Channel; he had been in the great battle at Terceira, and in the opinion of the service was second only to Santa Cruz. His flagship was the Santa Aña, a galleon of eight hundred tons; he sailed himself in the Gran Grin, of eleven hundred; so far fortunate, if anyone in the expedition could be called fortunate, for the Santa Aña was disabled in a storm at the mouth of the Channel.

The leaders of the squadrons of Castile and Andalusia were two cousins, Don Pedro and Don Diego de Valdez. Don Diego, whom Philip had chosen for the Duke's mentor, was famous as a naval architect, had been on exploring expeditions, and had made a certain reputation for himself. He was a jealous, suspicious, cautious kind of man, and Philip had a high opinion of him. Don Pedro was another of the heroes of Terceira, a rough, bold seaman, scarred in a hundred actions with English corsairs, and between the two kinsmen there was neither resemblance nor affection. Don Pedro's misfortune in the Channel, which will soon be heard of, brought him more honour than Don Diego earned by his timidity. He lived long after, and was for eight years Governor of Cuba, where the Castle of the Moro at Havannah still stands as his monument. Two other officers deserve peculiar mention: Miguel de Oquendo,

who sailed in the Señora de la Rosa, of Guypuscoa, and Alonzo de Leyva, who had a ship of his own, the Rata Coronada. Oquendo's career had been singularly distinguished. He had been the terror of the Turks in the Mediterranean. At Terceira, at a critical point in the action, he had rescued Santa Cruz when four French vessels were alongside of him. He had himself captured the French Admiral's flagship, carrying her by boarding, and sending his own flag to her masthead above the smoke of the battle. He was an excellent seaman besides, and managed his ship, as was said, as easily as a horse. Alonzo de Leyva held no special command beyond his own vessel; but he had been named by Philip to succeed Medina Sidonia in case of misadventure. With him, and under his special charge, were most of the high-born adventurous youths who had volunteered for the crusade. Neither he nor they were ever to see Spain again, but Spanish history ought not to forget him, and ought not to forget Oquendo.

Of priests and friars there were a hundred and eighty; of surgeons, doctors, and their assistants, in the entire fleet, not more than eighty-five. The numbers might have been reversed with advantage. Among the adventurers one only may be noted particularly, the poet Lope de Vega, then smarting from disappointment in a love-affair, and seeking new excitement.

Meanwhile, the winds were unpropitious. For fourteen days the fleet lay at anchor at the mouth of the Tagus unable to get away. They weighed at last on May 28, and stood out to sea; but a northerly breeze drove them to leeward, and they could make no progress, while almost instantly on their sailing the state of the stores was brought to light. The water had been on board for four months! the casks were leaking, and what was left of it was unfit to drink. The provisions, salt meat, cheese,

biscuit, were found to be half putrid, and a remarkable order was issued to serve out first what was in worse condition, that the supplies might hold out the longer. As the ships were to keep together, the course and speed were necessarily governed by those which sailed the worst. The galleons, high built, and with shallow draught of water, moved tolerably before the wind, but were powerless to work against it. The north wind freshened. They were carried down as low as Cape St. Vincent, standing out and in, and losing ground on each tack. After a fortnight's labour they were only in the latitude of Lisbon again. Tenders were sent in every day to Philip, with an account of their progress. Instead of being in the mouth of the Channel, the Duke had to report that he could make no way at all, and, far worse than that, the entire ships' companies were on the way to being poisoned. Each provision cask which was opened was found worse than the last. The biscuit was mouldy, the meat and fish stinking, the water foul and breeding dysentery. The crews and companies were loud in complaint; the officers had lost heart, and the Duke, who at starting had been drawing pictures in his imagination of glorious victories, had already begun to lament his weakness in having accepted the command. He trusted God would help him, he said. He wished no harm to anyone. He had left his quiet, and his home, and his children, out of pure love to his Majesty, and he hoped his Majesty would remember it.[1] The state of the stores was so desperate, especially of the water, that it was held unsafe to proceed. The pilots said that they must put into some port for a fresh supply. The Duke feared that if he consented the men, in their present humour, would take the opportunity and desert.

At length, on June 10, after three weeks of ineffectual

[1] Medina Sidonia to Philip the Second, May 30.

beating up and down, the wind shifted to the south-west, and the fleet could be laid upon its course. The anxiety was not much diminished. The salt meat, salt fish, and cheese were found so foul throughout that they were thrown overboard for fear of pestilence, and the rations were reduced to biscuit and weevils. A despatch was hurried off to Philip that fresh stores must instantly be sent out, or there would be serious disaster. The water was the worst of all, as when drunk it produced instant diarrhœa. On June 13 matters mended a little. The weather had cooled. The south-west wind had brought rain. The ships could be aired and purified. They were then off Finisterre, and were on a straight course for the Channel. Philip's orders had been positive that they were not to delay anywhere, that they were to hurry on and must not separate. They had five hundred men, however, down with dysentery, and the number of sick was increasing with appalling rapidity. A council was held on board the San Martin and the Admirals all agreed that go on they could not. Part of the fleet, at least, must make into Ferrol, land the sick, and bring off supplies. The Duke could not come to a resolution, but the winds and waves settled his uncertainties. On the 19th it came on to blow. The Duke, with the Portugal squadron, the galleys and the larger galleons, made in at once for Corunna, leaving the rest to follow, and was under shelter before the worst of the gale. The rest were caught outside and scattered. They came in as they could, most of them in the next few days, some dismasted, some leaking with strained timbers, the crews exhausted with illness; but at the end of a week a third part of the Armada was still missing, and those which had reached the harbour were scarcely able to man their yards. A hospital had to be established on shore. The tendency to desert had become so general that the landing-places

were occupied with bodies of soldiers. A despatch went off to the Escurial, with a despairing letter from the Duke to the King.

'The weather,' he said, 'though it is June, is as wild as in December. No one remembers such a season. It is the more strange since we are on the business of the Lord, and some reason there must be for what has befallen us. I told your Majesty that I was unfit for this command when you asked me to undertake it. I obeyed your orders, and now I am here in Corunna with the ships dispersed and the force remaining to me inferior to the enemy. The crews are sick, and grow daily worse from bad food and water. Most of our provisions have perished, and we have not enough for more than two months' consumption. Much depends on the safety of this fleet. You have exhausted your resources to collect it, and if it is lost you may lose Portugal and the Indies. The men are out of spirit. The officers do not understand their business. We are no longer strong. Do not deceive yourself into thinking that we are equal to the work before us. You remember how much it cost you to conquer Portugal, a country adjoining Castile, where half the inhabitants were in your favour. We are now going against a powerful kingdom with only the weak force of the Prince of Parma and myself. I speak freely, but I have laid the matter before the Lord; you must decide yourself what is to be done. Recollect only how many there are who envy your greatness and bear you no goodwill.'[1]

On the 27th thirty-five ships were still absent, and nothing had been heard of them. The storm, however, after all had not been especially severe, and it was not likely that they were lost. The condition to which the rest were reduced was due merely to rascally contractors and official negli-

[1] Medina Sidonia to Philip the Second from Corunna, June 24.

gence, and all could easily be repaired by an efficient commander in whom the men had confidence. But the Duke had no confidence in himself nor the officers in him. Four weeks only had passed since he had left Lisbon and he was already despondent, and his disquieted subordinates along with him. He had written freely to Philip, and advised that the expedition should be abandoned. He again summoned the Vice-Admirals to his cabin and required their opinions. Should they or should they not go forward with their reduced force? The Inspector-General, Don George Manrique, produced a schedule of numbers. They were supposed, he said, to have twenty-eight thousand men besides the galley-slaves. Owing to sickness and other causes, not more than twenty-two or twenty-three thousand could be regarded as effective, and of these six thousand were in the missing galleons. The Vice-Admirals were less easily frightened than their leader. None were for giving up. Most of them advised that they should wait where they were till the ships came in, repairing damages and taking in fresh stores. Pedro de Valdez insisted that they should go on as soon as possible. While they remained in harbour fresh meat and vegetables might be served out, and the crews would soon recover from a sickness which was caused only by bad food. With vigour and energy all that was wrong could be set right. The missing ships were doubtless ahead expecting them, and would be fallen in with somewhere.

Don Pedro was addressing brave men, and carried the council along with him. He wrote himself to Philip to tell him what had passed. 'The Duke,' he said, 'bore him no goodwill for his advice, but he intended to persist in a course which he believed to be for his Majesty's honour.'

A day or two later the wanderers came back and restored

the Duke's courage. Some had been as far as Scilly, some even in Mount's Bay, but none had been lost and none had been seriously injured. The fresh meat was supplied as Don Pedro advised. The sick recovered; not one died, and all were soon in health again. Fresh supplies were poured down out of the country. The casks were refilled with pure water. In short, the sun began to shine once more, and the despondency fit passed away. Philip wrote kindly and cheerily. 'Everything would be furnished which they could want. The Duke might spend money freely and need spare nothing to feed the men as they ought to be fed. If they had met with difficulties in the beginning they would have greater glory in the end. There were difficulties in every enterprise. They must overcome them and go on.' The Duke still hesitated. He said truly enough that other things were wanting besides food: powder, cordage, and the thousand minor stores which ought to have been provided and were not. But the rest of the chief officers were now in heart again, and he found himself alone; Recalde only, like a wise man, begging Philip to modify his instructions and allow him to secure Plymouth or Dartmouth on their advance, as, although they might gain a victory, it was unlikely to be so complete as to end the struggle, and they might require a harbour to shelter the fleet.

Philip, unfortunately for himself, paid no attention to Recalde's suggestion, but only urged them to begone at their best speed. The ships were laid on shore to be scraped and tallowed. The gaps in the crews were filled up with fresh recruits. Another ship was added, and at the final muster there were a hundred and thirty-one vessels, between seven and eight thousand sailors and seventeen thousand infantry, two thousand slaves, and fourteen hundred officers, priests, gentlemen, and servants.

With restored health and good-humour they were again commended to the Lord. Tents were set up on an island in the harbour, with an altar in each and friars in sufficient number to officiate. The ships' companies were landed and brought up man by man till the whole of them had again confessed and again received the Sacrament.

'This,' said the Duke, 'is great riches, and the most precious jewel which I carry with me. They now are all well, and content, and cheerful.'

II

Two months of summer were still left when the Armada made its second start out of Corunna on Friday, July 22, with fresh heart and better provision. On the 23rd the last vessel in the fleet had passed Cape Ortegal, and the wind, as if to make amends for past persecution, blew fair and moderate from the south. Saturday, Sunday, and Monday the galleons swept easily along across the Bay of Biscay, and on the Monday night, the 25th, the Duke found himself with all his flock about him at the mouth of the English Channel. Tuesday broke calm and cloudy, with a draft of northerly air. Heavy showers fell. One of the galleys had sprung a leak, and was obliged to go home. On Wednesday the wind backed to the west, and rose into a gale, blowing hard with a high sea. The waves broke into the stern galleries of the galleons, and the fleet was hove to. On Friday the storm was over, but there was still a long, heavy roll. The ships were unmanageable, and from the maintop of the San Martin forty sail were again not to be seen. The remaining galleys, finding that in such

weather they were like to be swamped, had made away for the coast of France; the Santa Aña, the Capitana of the Biscay squadron, had disappeared completely, and was supposed to have been sunk. She had in fact lost her reckoning, and at last found her way into Havre. The rest of the missing ships proved only to be a few miles ahead. After a slight flutter, the Armada, shorn of its galleys and the Santa Aña, was again complete, and with the sky clearing from south-west went on upon its way. As yet they had seen nothing—not a sail or a boat; but being on the enemy's coast they put themselves into fighting order. They were in three divisions. The Duke was in the centre with the main battle. Alonzo de Leyva led the advance as the post of honour. The rear was under Martinez de Recalde, the formation being like an oblique crescent, or like the moon when it lies on its back, De Leyva and Recalde being at the two horns.

In this order they sailed slowly on through the day, still with nothing in sight, but knowing by observation and soundings that they were coming up to land. The sun on Friday, at noon, gave them 50 degrees, and the lead 56 fathoms. At four in the afternoon the grey ridge of the Lizard rose above the sea three leagues off. They were now in sight of the den of the dragon which they were come to slay, and Medina Sidonia ran up to his mast-head a special flag of his own, which had been embroidered for the occasion—Christ on the Cross, and Our Lady and the Magdalen on either side of Him. As the folds unrolled in the breeze, each ship in the fleet fired a broadside, and the ships' companies gathered and knelt on the deck to give thanks to the Almighty.

That evening the Duke despatched the last letter to the King which for a month he had leisure to write. So far, he said, the enemy had not shown himself, and he was

going forward in the dark; no word had come from Parma; before him was only the silent sea, and the long line of the Cornish coast, marked at intervals by columns of smoke which he knew to be alarm beacons. The sea that was so silent would soon be noisy enough. With a presentiment of danger, the Duke told the King that he must so far disregard his orders that, until Parma had communicated with him, he proposed to halt at the Isle of Wight and to go no further. Sail was taken in that night. On the Saturday morning a despatch boat was sent away with the letter to the King, and the fleet crept on slowly and cautiously. They had hoped to fall in with a fishing-smack, but none were to be discovered; nor was it till Saturday night, or rather at one o'clock on the Sunday morning, that they were able to gather any information at all. At that hour, and not before, a pinnace that had gone forward to observe came back with four Falmouth fishermen who had been fallen in with at sea. From them the Duke and the admirals learnt that Drake and Howard had come out that morning from Plymouth harbour, and were lying in the Sound, or outside it, waiting for them. The burning beacons had brought notice on the Friday evening that the Armada was in sight, and the English had instantly got under way. The Spanish records and diaries say distinctly that from these fishermen they had gathered their first and only knowledge of the English movements. The charge afterwards brought against the Duke, therefore, that he had learnt that Plymouth was undefended, that Oquendo and Recalde urged him to go in and take it, and that he refused and lost the opportunity, is proved to be without foundation. Very likely a council of admirals did advise that Plymouth should be attacked if they found Howard and Drake still in the Sound, for in the narrow space the ships would be close together, and the superior numbers of

the Spaniards and their superior strength in small arms and musketry would be able to assert themselves. Medina Sidonia may have agreed, for all that anyone can say to the contrary, but the opportunity was never allowed him. The English fleet was already outside, and the Duke could not enter till he had fought an action.

An hour after midnight, on the Sunday morning, the Falmouth boatmen gave their information. Four hours later, directly off Ramhead, the two fleets were engaged. The air through the night had been light from the west. The water was smooth. At five o'clock, just after sunrise, eleven large vessels were seen from the deck of the San Martin three miles to leeward, outside the Mewstone, manœuvring to recover the wind, which was beginning to freshen. Forty others were counted between the Armada and the land to the west of the Sound. The squadron first seen consisted of the Queen's ships under Lord Howard; the others were Drake and the privateers. The breeze rose rapidly. The Duke flew the consecrated standard, and signalled to the whole fleet to brace round their yards and hold the wind between the two English divisions. Howard, however, with apparent ease, went on to windward and joined Drake. Both of them then stood out to sea behind the whole Armada, firing heavily into Recalde and the rearward Spanish squadron as they passed. Recalde tried hard to close, but Sir John Hawkins had introduced new lines into the construction of the English ships. The high castles at poop and stem had been reduced, the length increased, the beam diminished. They could sail perhaps within five points of the wind. They showed powers, at any rate, entirely new to Recalde, for they seemed to be able to keep at any distance which they pleased from him. They did not try to break his line or capture detached vessels. With their heavy guns, which he found to his cost

to be of weightier metal and to carry farther than his own, they poured their broadsides into him at their leisure, and he could make no tolerable reply. Alonzo de Leyva and Oquendo, seeing that Recalde was suffering severely, went to his assistance, but only to experience themselves the effects of this novel method of naval combat and naval construction. To fight at a distance was contrary to Spanish custom, and was not held worthy of honourable men. But it was effective; it was perplexing, it was deadly. The engagement lasted on these conditions through the whole Sunday forenoon. The officers of the Armada did all that gallant men could achieve. They refused to recognise where the English superiority lay till it was forced upon them by torn rigging and shattered hulls. Recalde's own ship fired a hundred and twenty shot, and it was thought a great thing. But the English had fired five to the Spanish one, and the effect was the greater because, as in Rodney's action at Dominica, the galleons were crowded with troops, among whom shot and splinter had worked havoc. The Castilians and Biscayans were brave enough; there were no braver men in the world; but they were in a position where courage was of no use to them. They were perplexed and disturbed; and a gentleman present who describes the scene observes that 'este dia mostraronse de nuestra Armada algunos officiales medrosos'—this day some of the officers of our fleet showed cowardice. The allusion was perhaps to the Duke, who had looked on and done nothing.

No prizes were taken. Drake and Howard understood their business too well to waste life upon single captures. Their purpose was to harass, shatter, and weaken the entire Armada, as opportunity might offer, with the least damage to themselves, till shot and weather, and the casualties likely to occur under such conditions, had reduced the fleets

to something nearer to an equality. Tactics so novel baffled the Spaniards. They had looked for difficulties, but they had counted with certainty on success if they could force the English into a general engagement. No wonder that they were unpleasantly startled at the result of the first experiment.

The action, if such it could be called when the Armada had been but a helpless target to the English guns, lasted till four in the afternoon. The south-west wind then was blowing up, and the sea was rising. The two fleets had by that time driven past the opening into the Sound. The Duke could not have gone in if he had tried, nor could De Leyva himself, under such circumstances, have advised him to try; so, finding that he could do nothing, and was only throwing away life, he signalled from the San Martin to bear away up Channel. The misfortunes of the day, however, were not yet over. The Spanish squadrons endeavoured to resume their proper positions, De Leyva leading and Recalde covering the rear. The English followed leisurely, two miles behind, and Recalde's own vessel had suffered so much in the engagement that she was observed to be dropping back, and to be in danger of being left alone and overtaken. Pedro de Valdez, in the Capitana of the Andalusian squadron, one of the finest ships in the fleet, observing his old comrade in difficulties, bore up to help him. After such a day, the men, perhaps, were all of them disturbed, and likely to make mistakes in difficult manœuvres. In turning, the Capitana came into collision with the Santa Catalina and broke her own bowsprit; the fore-topmast followed, and the ship became an unmanageable wreck. She had five hundred men on board, besides a considerable part of the money which had been sent for the use of the fleet. To desert such a vessel, and desert along with it one of the principal officers of the ex-

pedition, on the first disaster, would be an act of cowardice and dishonour not to be looked for in a Spanish nobleman. But night was coming on. To bear up was to risk a renewal of the fighting, for which the Duke had no stomach. He bore Don Pedro a grudge for having opposed him at Corunna, when he had desired to abandon the expedition; Diego Florez, his adviser, had also his dislike for Don Pedro, and, to the astonishment of everyone, the signal was made that the fleet was not to stop, and that Don Pedro was to be left to his fate. De Leyva and Oquendo, unable to believe the order to be serious, hastened on board the San Martin to protest. The Duke hesitated; Diego Florez, however, said that to wait would be to risk the loss of the whole fleet, and by Diego Florez Philip had directed the Duke to be guided. Boats were sent back to bring off the Capitana's treasure and the crew, but in the rising sea boats could do nothing. Don Pedro was deserted, overtaken, and of course captured, after a gallant resistance. The ship was carried into Dartmouth, and proved a valuable prize. Besides the money, there was found a precious store of powder, which the English sorely needed. Among other articles was a chest of swords, richly mounted, which the Duke was taking over to be presented to the English Catholic peers. Don Pedro himself was treated with the high courtesy which he deserved, to be ransomed at the end of a year, and to be spared the ignominy of further service under his extraordinary commander-in-chief.

The loss of Don Pedro was not the last, and not the worst, calamity of the night. Soon after dark the air was shaken and the sky was lighted by an explosion in the centre of the Spanish fleet. Oquendo's ship, Our Lady of the Rose, was blown up, and two hundred men, dead and wounded, were hurled into the sea. The wreck that was left was seen to be in a blaze, in which the rest on board

were like to perish. Oquendo himself was absent. Some said it was an accident, others that it had been done by an Englishman in disguise, others that there had been some quarrel, and that one of the parties in a rage had flung a match into the magazine and sprung overboard. This time the Armada was rounded to; the burning ship was covered by the main body. The money on board, for each galleon had its own treasury, was taken out with the survivors of the crew. The hull was then abandoned to the English. A few casks of stores were still found in her hold which had escaped destruction. Shortly afterwards she sank.

From the day on which it sailed the fleet had been pursued by misfortune. Two such disasters following on the unexpected and startling features of the first engagement struck a chill through the whole force. The officers had no longer the least trust in a commander-in-chief whom they had ill liked from the first. The national honour was supposed to be touched by the desertion of Pedro de Valdez, who was universally loved and respected. The Duke was suspected to be no better than a poltroon. The next morning, August 1, broke heavily. The wind was gone, and the galleons were rolling in the swell. The enemy was hull down behind them, and the day was spent in repairing damages, knotting broken ropes, and nailing sheets of lead over the shot holes. Recalde's ship had been so roughly handled that the disposition of the squadrons was altered. De Leyva took charge of the rear in the Rata Coronada, where the danger was greatest. Don Martinez was passed forward into the advance, where he could attend to his hurts out of harm's way. The Duke in sour humour found fault all round, as incompetent commanders are apt to do. Orders were issued that each ship should keep a position definitely laid down; and any captain found out of his place was to

be immediately hanged. Men will endure much from leaders whom they trust. Severity at such a moment was resented as ill-timed and undeserved. The day passed without incident. With the sunset the sea fell smooth, and not an air was stirring. The English fleet had come up, but was still a league behind. Both fleets were then off Portland. An hour after midnight De Leyva, Oquendo, and Recalde, burning with shame and indignation, came on board the San Martin, woke the Duke out of his sleep, and told him that now was the time for him to repair his credit. By the light of the rising moon the English ships could be seen drifted apart with the tide, and deprived in the breathless calm of their superior advantages. The galeasses, with their oars, should be sent out instantly to attack single vessels. The dawn it was likely would bring a breeze from the east, when the galleons could gather way and support them. The Duke roused himself. Oquendo himself carried the orders to the captain of the galeasses, Don Hugo de Monçada. The galeasses prepared for action. The easterly air came up as was expected, and with the first clear light Howard was seen dead to leeward standing in for the land, and endeavouring, as he had done at Plymouth, to recover the weather-gage. The galeasses proved of small service after all, for the wind was soon too fresh; and they were useless. They could do nothing except in a calm. But the San Martin and her leading consorts bore down with all sail set. Howard being near the shore, had to tack and stand off to sea. He had thus to pass out through the centre of the whole Spanish fleet. The ships became intermixed, the Ark Raleigh was surrounded with enemies, and every Spanish captain's heart was bounding with the hope of boarding her. If they could once grapple they were justly confident in the numbers and courage of their men. So near the chances were at one moment, that

Martin De Bretandona, the Levantine commander, might have closed with one of the largest of the English ships 'if he could have been contented with less than the vessel which carried Howard's flag.' But the wind freshened up with the day, and Don Martin and his friends saw vessels handled in a style which they had never seen before. It has been often confidently urged, as a reason for reducing the naval estimates, that Howard's fleet was manned by volunteers, and not by professional seamen. It is true that the English crews were not composed of men who were in the permanent service of the Crown, but never in the history of the country were a body of sailors gathered together more experienced in sailing ships and fighting them. They were the rovers of the ocean. To navigate the wildest seas, to fight Spaniards wherever they could meet them, had for thirty years been their occupation and their glory. Tacking, wearing, making stern way where there was no room to turn, they baffled every attack by the swiftness of their movements, and cleared their way out of the throng. Once more they drew away to windward, took at their leisure such positions as suited them, and, themselves beyond the reach of the feeble Spanish artillery, fired into the galleons with their long heavy guns till five o'clock in the afternoon. This day the Duke personally behaved well. The San Martin was in the thickest of the fight, and received fifty shots in her hull. The famous standard was cut in two. The leaks were so many and so formidable that the divers were again at work all night plugging and stopping the holes. But the result was to show him, and to show them all, that the English ships were superior to theirs in speed and power and weight of artillery, and that to board them against their will was entirely hopeless. Another observation some of them made which was characteristic of the age. The galleons which had no gentlemen on board had been observed to hold off

and keep out of range. In the evening the wind fell. With the last of it, Howard and Drake bore away and left them, as, with the calm, the galeasses might again be dangerous. Wednesday was breathless. The English wanted powder besides, having used what they had freely; and they were forced to wait for fresh supplies, which came up in the course of the afternoon. The Duke, as has been seen, was superstitious. So far the nuns' and the hermits' visions had not been realised, but, perhaps, his past ill-success had been sent only as a trial of his faith.

The 4th of August, Thursday, was St. Dominic's Day. The house of Guzman de Silva claimed St. Dominic as a member of their family; and St. Dominic, the Duke was assured, would now lend a hand to his suffering kinsman. The Isle of Wight, where he had announced to Philip that he intended to stop, was directly under his lee. Once anchored in St. Helen's Roads he would have the Armada in a safe shelter, where, if the English chose to attack him, they must come to closer quarters, as there would not be sea room for the manœuvres which had been so disastrous to him.[1] If he could land ten thousand men he might take the island; and, perplexed, agitated, and harassed by the unexpected course which events had taken with him, he probably still intended to act on this resolution, which was the wisest which he could have formed. He would have another action to fight before he could get in, but with St. Dominic's help he might this time have better fortune.

[1] The Duke's intention of stopping at the Isle of Wight was expressed by him as clearly as possible. Writing on July 30 to the King, he said he must advance 'poco a poco con toda el Armada junta en mis escuadrones hasta isla D'Wich y *no pasar* adelante hasta tener aviso del Duque de Parma. Porque si yo saliese de alli con esta, la costa de Flandes no habiendo en toda ella puerto ni abrigo ninguno para estas naves, con el primer temporal que les diese los echaria á los bancos, donde sin ningun remedio se habrian de perder; y por excusar este peligro tan evidente, me ha parecido no pasar adelante de aquella isla hasta saber lo que el Duque hace,' etc.—Duro, vol. ii., p. 221.

Howard and Drake seemed willing to give St. Dominic an opportunity of showing what he could do. They had received their powder. They had been reinforced by a few privateers who had come out from the Needles, and they showed a disposition to engage at a nearer distance than they had hitherto ventured. They were so far at a disadvantage that the wind was light, but, using what there was of it, the Ark Raleigh led straight down on the San Martin, ranged alongside, and opened a furious fire from her lower ports, as it appeared to the Spaniards, with heavier guns than she had used in the previous actions. Again the San Martin was badly cut up. Many of her men were killed and more were wounded. Seeing her hard pressed, Recalde and Oquendo came to the Duke's support. Oquendo drove his own ship between the Ark and the San Martin, receiving the broadside intended for her, and apparently causing some confusion on board the Ark by a shot of his own. At this moment the wind dropped altogether. An eddy of the tide carried off the other English ships, leaving Howard surrounded once more by the enemy and in worse difficulties than in the fight off Portland. Three large galleons were close on board of him with Oquendo, the boldest officer of the Armada, in one of them. Eleven boats, to the amazement of the Spaniards, dropped over the Ark's side. Hundreds of men sprang into them, seized their oars, and took the Ark in tow, careless of the storm of musketry which was rattling upon them. She was already moving when the breeze rose again. Her sails filled and she flew away, dragging her own boats, and leaving behind the swiftest of the pursuing galleons as if they were at anchor.[1]

[1] 'Se fué saliendo con tanta velocidad que el galeon San Juan de Fernando y otro ligerísimo, con ser los mas veleros de la Armada, que le fuéron dando caça, en comparacion se quedaron surtos.'

Again the experience was the same. St. Dominic had been deaf or impotent, and a long day of fighting at disadvantage ended as usual. The ammunition of the Armada, which the Duke knew from the first to be insufficient, was giving out under the unprecedented demands upon it. Had he been wise he would still have made a desperate attempt to force his way into St. Helen's. His strength was not very much reduced. Though the loss of life had been considerable, Pedro de Valdez's ship was the only one which had been taken. To prevent him from entering the Solent the English must have closed with him, which they still hesitated to do, as they could not now tell how much hurt they had inflicted. The Duke had still this single chance of recovering his credit. He might have gone in. Had he done it, he might have taken the Wight, have even taken Portsmouth or Southampton; at all events, he would have placed the Armada in a position out of which it would have been extremely difficult to dislodge it. But the unfortunate man had lost his head. He hated his work. He determined to look neither right nor left, but stick to Philip's own instructions, go on to the Straits of Dover as he had been told to do, send Parma notice of his arrival, and leave the rest to fate. He despatched a messenger to tell the Prince to expect him and to have his army embarked ready to cross on the instant of his arrival. He asked for a supply of fly-boats, gun-boats worked with oars, which Parma could not send him, and for ammunition of which the Prince had none to dispose, expecting himself rather to be furnished from the fleet. Then, taking the worst resolution possible, and going forward to inevitable ruin, he signalled to his flock to follow him and pursued his way up Channel, followed by the English as before.

The Isle of Wight once passed, the worst danger to

England was over. Lord Henry Seymour's squadron was in the Downs. Howard and Drake would soon join hands with him, and they could then concert what was next to be done.

The Armada drifted on before a light west wind through Thursday night, all Friday, and till Saturday afternoon. They were then at Calais and dropped anchor in the roads. Like a shadow which they could not shake off, the English clung to them behind. As they anchored, the English anchored also, a mile and a half astern, as if the infernal devils, *esta endemoniada gente*, had known what the Duke was going to do. Philip's advice had been to avoid the French coast, to keep the other side, and to bring up behind the North Foreland. The Duke, like Sancho, in the night adventure with the fulling hammers, was flying for safety under the skirts of Parma's coat, and thought that the nearer he could be to him the better it would be. He had thus brought his charge to the most dangerous roadstead in the Channel, with an enemy close to him who had less cause to fear the weather than he, and almost within gunshot of the French shore, when he did not know whether France was friend or foe. For the moment he thought himself secure. The wind was off the land. He looked to see the Prince of Parma and his boats coming out of Dunkirk at latest on the Monday morning. The French Governor came off to call before dark, expressed his surprise to see him in a position where a shift of weather might be inconvenient, but offered him, meanwhile, the hospitalities of the port. On the Sunday morning, August 7, the purveyor of the fleet went on shore to buy vegetables. The men were employed cleaning up the guns and setting the ships in order after the confusion of the past week, and so much work had to be done that the daily rations were not served out and the Sunday holy day was

a harassed fast. As the day wore on messengers came in from Parma. His transports were lying in Dunkirk, but nothing was ready, and the troops could not be embarked for a fortnight. He was himself at Bruges, but promised to hurry down to the port and to use all possible expedition. This was not consoling intelligence. In the uncertain weather the Calais roadstead was no place to linger in; and the Duke's anxieties were not diminished when the English squadron of the Downs under Seymour and Sir John Hawkins sailed in and anchored with their consorts. Hawkins—Achines they called him—was an object of peculiar terror to the Spaniards from his exploits in the West Indies. Next to Drake, or the Dragon, he was more feared than any other English seaman. The galleons were riding with two anchors on account of the tide. An English pinnace, carrying a light gun, ran down in the afternoon, sailed up to the San Martin, lodged a couple of shots in her hull, and went off again. Hugo de Monçada sent a ball after her from the Capitana galeass which cut a hole in her topsail, but she flew lightly away. The Spanish officers could not refuse their admiration for such airy impertinence.

If the Duke was uneasy the English commanders did not mean to give him time to recover himself. Calais Roads might be an awkward anchorage, but the weather might settle. August weather in the Channel often did settle. There had been a week of fighting and the Armada had got the worst of it, but still there it was, to outward appearance, not much damaged and within touch of the Prince of Parma. The backward state of Parma's preparations was unknown and unsuspected by the English commanders. Any morning he might be looked for, issuing out of Dunkirk with his fleet of gunboats, his army on board his barges, and making his way across the Straits

with the Armada to protect him. That Sunday evening Howard, Drake, Hawkins, Seymour, and Martin Frobisher held a consultation in the Ark's main cabin. The course which they intended to follow had probably been resolved on generally when Howard anchored so near the enemy on the previous evening, and the meeting must have been only to arrange the method and moment of action. After nightfall, the flood tide would be running strong along the coast, and an intermittent but rising wind was coming up from the west. The Duke, as he restlessly paced his deck, observed lights moving soon after dark among the English vessels. He expected mischief of some kind and had ordered a strict look-out. About midnight eight large hulks were seen coming slowly down with tide and wind. Spars, ropes, and sails had been steeped in pitch, and as they approached nearer they burst out into flame and smoke. Straight on they came, for they had crews on board to direct the course, who only retreated to their boats when it was impossible to remain longer. The Spaniards, already agitated by the strange tricks of their English foes, imagined that the fire-ships were floating mines like those which had blown to pieces so many thousands of men at the bridge at Antwerp. The Duke, instead of sending launches to tow them clear, fired a signal for the whole fleet to get instantly under way. In the hurry and alarm, and with two anchors down, they had no time to weigh. They cut their cables, leaving buoys by which to recover them at daylight, and stood out into the Channel, congratulating themselves for the moment at having skilfully and successfully avoided a threatening danger. . Medina Sidonia's intention had been to bring up again outside. He himself let go an anchor two miles off, and the best-appointed galleons followed his example. The main body, unfortunately, had been sent to sea so ill-provided that their third anchors, where they had any, were

stowed away below and could not be brought up in time. Thus, when day dawned, the Duke found himself with less than half his force about him. The rest had drifted away on the tide and were six miles to leeward. The purpose of his enemy's 'traicion,' treason, as the Spaniards regarded it, was now apparent. The San Martin, and the vessels which remained with her, hoisted anchor and signalled to return to the roadstead. Seventy of the Duke's ships were far away, unable to obey if they had tried. The wind had drawn into the north-west; they were driving seemingly on the fatal banks, and when the Duke proposed to go after them the pilots told him that if he did they would probably be all lost together.

The spectacle on the shore was yet more dispiriting. The Capitana galeass, in clearing out from the fire-ships, had fouled the cable of another vessel. Monçada, who commanded her, knew as little of seamanship as his commander-in-chief. Her helm was jammed. An English crew with two hundred men at the oars, would have found a way to manage her, but with galley slaves nothing could be done. She had drifted ashore under the town, and as the tide had gone back, was lying on her side on the sands, defending herself desperately against the crews of six English ships, one of them Howard's Ark, who were attacking her in their boats. Monçada fought like a hero till he was killed by a musket shot, the slaves jumped overboard, the surviving sailors and soldiers followed their example, and the galeass was taken and plundered.

To the Duke such a sight was sad enough; but he had little time to attend to it. While Howard was losing time over the galeass, Drake and Hawkins had stooped on a nobler quarry. The great fleet was parted; forty ships alone were present to defend the consecrated banner of Castile which was flying from the mainmast of the San

Martin. Forty only, and no more, were engaged in the battle which stripped Spain of her supremacy at sea. But in those forty were Oquendo, De Leyva, Recalde, Bretandona, all that was best and bravest in the Spanish service. The first burst of the storm fell on the San Martin herself. Drake, determined to make the most of his opportunity, no longer held off at long range, but closed up, yardarm to yardarm; not to make prizes of the galleons, but to destroy, sink, or disable them. The force which the English brought into the action was no longer unequal to that of the enemy. The air was soon so full of smoke that little could be seen from one ship of what was passing in another part of the action. Each captain fought his own vessel as he could, Medina giving no orders. He who, till the past few days, had never heard a shot fired in anger, found himself in the centre of the most furious engagement that history had a record of. He was accused afterwards of having shown cowardice. It was said that his cabin was stuffed with woolpacks, and that he lay himself during the fight in the middle of them. It was said, also, that he charged his pilot to take his ship where the danger was least. If he did, his pilot disobeyed his orders, for the San Martin was in the hottest part of the battle. It could not be otherwise. The flag which she carried to the end of it necessarily drew the heaviest fire upon her. The accounts of eye-witnesses charge the Duke only with the helpless incapacity which he had himself been the first to acknowledge. Though the San Martin's timbers were of double thickness, the shot at close range went through and through her, 'enough to shatter to pieces a rock.' Her deck became a slaughter-house. Half her crew were killed or wounded, and she would have been sunk altogether had not Oquendo and De Leyva dashed in and forced the English to turn their guns upon them, and enabled the unhappy Duke to

crawl away and stop his leaks again. This was about noon; and from that time he himself saw no more till the engagement was over. Even from his maintop nothing could be made out for the smoke; but the air was shaking with the roar of the artillery. The Spanish officers behaved with the desperate heroism which became the countrymen of Cortez and Santa Cruz, and never did Spanish soldier or seaman distinguish himself more than on this tremendous day. There was no flinching, though the blood was seen streaming out of the scuppers. Priests went up and down under the hottest fire, crucifix in hand, confessing and absolving the dying. Not a ship struck her colours. They stood to their guns till their powder was all gone, and in half the ships not a round was left.

Happily for them, the English were no better furnished; Howard's ammunition was all exhausted also, and the combat ended from mere incapacity to continue it. But the engagement from the first preserved the same character which had been seen in those which had preceded it. The Spaniards' courage was useless to them. Their ships could not turn or sail; their guns were crushed by the superior strength of the English artillery; they were out-matched in practical skill, and, close as the ships were to one another, they could not once succeed in fixing a grappling-iron in an English rigging. Thus, while their own losses were terrible, they could inflict but little in return. They had endured for five hours to be torn to pieces by cannon-shot—and that was all.

Before sunset the firing had ceased; the wind rose, the smoky canopy drifted away, and the San Martin and her comrades were seen floating, torn and tattered, *casi sin poder hacer mas resistencia*, almost powerless to resist longer. If the attack had continued for the two hours of daylight that remained, they must all have sunk or surrendered.

A galleon in Recalde's squadron had gone down with all hands on board. The San Philip and the San Matteo were falling away dismasted and helpless towards the Dutch coast, where they afterwards went ashore. The condition of the rest was little better. The slaughter had been appalling from the crowd of soldiers who were on board. They had given themselves up as lost when it pleased God, for they could give no other explanation, that the enemy ceased to fire, drew off and left them, to bring their vessels to the wind, throw their dead overboard, and see to the hurts of the wounded, who were counted by thousands. They were so crippled that they could not bear their canvas, and unless they could repair their damages swiftly, the north-west wind which was rapidly rising would drive them on the banks above Dunkirk. From the day on which they left Lisbon an inexorable fatality had pursued them. They had started in an inflated belief that they were under the especial care of the Almighty. One misfortune had trod on another's heel; the central misfortune of all, that they had been commanded by a fool, had begun to dawn on the whole of them. But the conviction came too late to be of use, and only destroyed what was left of discipline. The soldiers, finding that they outnumbered the seamen, snatched the control, chose their own course, and forced the pilots to steer as they pleased. The night passed miserably in examining into injuries, patching up what admitted of being mended, and discovering other hurts which could not be mended. The fresh water which they had brought from Corunna had been stowed on deck. The casks had been shot through in the action, and most of it was gone. The Ave Maria, if it was sung that evening, must have been a dirge, and the Buenos Dias of the ship boys in the morning a melancholy mockery. Yet seventy vessels out of the great fleet were

still entire. They had not come up to join in the fight, because they could not. Their hulls were sound, their spars were standing, their crews untouched by any injury worse than despondency. The situation was not really desperate, and a capable chief with such a force at his disposition might have done something still to retrieve his country's credit, if only these ships could be made use of. Yet when day broke it seemed that a common fate would soon overtake those who had fought and those who so far had escaped.

They came together in the night. The dawn found them dragging heavily into the North Sea. The north-west wind was blowing hard, and setting them bodily on the banks. The bad sailers could not go to windward at all. Those which had been in the fight could not bear sail enough to hold a course which, when sound, they might have found barely possible. The crews were worn out. On the Sunday they had been dinnerless and supperless. All Monday they had been fighting, and all Monday night plugging shot-holes and fishing spars. The English fleet hung dark and threatening a mile distant on the weather quarter. The water was shoaling every moment. They could see the yellow foam where the waves were breaking on the banks. To wear round would be to encounter another battle, for which they had neither heart nor strength, while the English appeared to be contented to let the elements finish the work for them. The English vessels drew more water, and would have grounded while the galleons were still afloat. It was enough for them if they could prevent the Armada from turning round and could force it to continue upon a course of which an hour or two would probably see the end. The San Martin and Oquendo's ship, the San Juan, were furthest out. The sounding-line on the San Martin gave at last but six fathoms; the vessels to leeward had only five. Some one, perhaps Diego Florez,

advised the Duke to strike his flag and surrender. Report said that a boat was actually lowered to go off to Howard and make terms, and that Oquendo had prevented it from pushing off, by saying savagely that he would fling Diego Florez overboard. The Duke's friends, however, denied the charge, and insisted that he never lost his faith in God and God's glorious mother. Certain it is, that with death staring them in the face and themselves helpless, men and officers betook themselves to prayer as the only refuge left, and apparently the prayer was answered. A person who was on the San Martin describes the scene. Everyone was in despair, he said, and only looking for destruction. Had the enemy known the condition in which they were, and borne down and attacked them, they must all have given in, for they were without power to defend themselves. At the last extremity, somewhere about noon, 'God was pleased to work a miracle.' The wind shifted, backing to the south-west, and ceased to jam them down upon the sands. With eased sheets they were able to point their heads northwards and draw out into the deep water. The enemy followed, still keeping at the same distance, but showed no further disposition to meddle with them; and the Armada breathed again, though huddled together like a flock of frightened sheep. A miracle they thought it. Being pious Catholics and living upon faith in the supernatural they recovered heart, and began to think that God's anger was spent, and that He would now be propitious. He had been with them when they thought they were deserted. He had brought the survivors of them 'through the most terrible cannonade ever seen in the history of the world' (la mas fuerte bateria y major que los nacidos han visto ni los escriptores han escrito). He had perhaps been disciplining them to do His work after all. Death at any rate was no longer before their eyes.

Alas! if the change of wind was really an act of Providence in answer to prayer, Providence was playing with their credulity, and reserving them deliberately for an end still more miserable. This Tuesday, August 9, was the day of Philip's patron saint, St. Lawrence, whose arm he had lately added to his sacred treasures in the Escurial. In the afternoon a council of war was again held on board the flag-ship, consisting of the Duke, Alonzo de Leyva, Recalde, Don Francisco de Bobadilla, and Diego Florez. They had little pleasant to say to each other. Oquendo was at first absent, but came in while they were still deliberating. O Señor Oquendo, they cried, 'que haremos,' 'What shall we do?' 'Do!' he replied, 'bear up and fight again.' It was the answer of a gallant man who preferred death to disgrace. But the Duke had to consider how to save what was left of his charge, and the alternatives had to be considered. They were before the wind, running right up the North Sea. The Duke explained that every cartridge had been spent in the vessels which had been engaged, and that, although some were left in the rest of the fleet, the supply was miserably short. Their ships were leaking. Half the sailors and half the artillerymen were killed or wounded. The Prince of Parma was not ready, and they had found by experience that they were no match for the English in fighting. The coast of Spain was at present unprotected, and unless they could carry the fleet home in safety would be in serious danger. The Duke's own opinion was that they ought to make haste back, and by the sea route round the North of Scotland and Ireland. To return through the Straits implied more battles, and in their battered state it was doubtful whether they could work their way as the wind stood, even if the enemy left them alone.

Flight, for it was nothing else, after such high expecta-

tions and loud prayers and boastings, flight after but a week's conflict, seemed to the old companions of Santa Cruz an intolerable shame. De Leyva was doubtful. He admitted, as the Duke said, that the English were too strong for them. They had done their best and it had not availed. His own ship would hardly float, and he had not thirty cartridges left. Recalde and Bobadilla supported Oquendo, and insisted that, at whatever risk, they must endeavour to recover Calais Roads. They were old sailors, who had weathered many a storm, and fought in many a battle. The chances of war had been against them so far, but would not be against them always. If the English fleet could go down Channel, it was not to be supposed that a Spanish fleet could not, and if they were to return home the Channel was the nearest road. If the worst came, an honourable death was better than a scandalous retreat.

Spanish history has accused Medina Sidonia of having been the cause that the bolder course was rejected. Independent contemporary witnesses say that it was made impossible by the despondency of the men, who could not be induced to encounter the English again.

Though he determined against returning through the Channel, more than one alternative was still open to him. The harbours of Holland and Zealand were in the hands of Dutch rebels. But there was the Elbe, there was the Baltic, there was Norway. If the Duke had been a man of daring and genius there was the Frith of Forth. Had he anchored off Leith and played his cards judiciously, there was still a possibility for him to achieve something remarkable. The Duke, however, probably knew that his master had intended to exclude the King of Scots from the English succession, and may have doubted the reception which he might meet with. Or, and perhaps more probably, he was sick of a command which had brought him

nothing but defeat and distraction, and was only eager to surrender his trust at the earliest possible moment.

Thus forlorn and miserable, the great Armada, which was to have made an end of the European Reformation, was set upon its course for the Orkneys, from thence to bear away to the West of Ireland, and so round to Spain. Drake and Howard, not conceiving that their object would be so lightly abandoned, and ignorant of the condition to which the enemy was reduced, followed them at a distance to see what they would do, and on the Wednesday had almost taken Recalde, whose disabled ship was lagging behind. The Duke, however, did not dare to desert a second admiral. He waited for Recalde to come up, and the English did not interfere. In fact they could not. Owing to Elizabeth's parsimony, their magazines were hardly better furnished than the Spanish. In pursuing the Armada they acknowledged that they were but 'putting on a brag' to frighten the Duke out of turning back. They could not have seriously attacked him again, at all events for many days, and the bravest course would after all have proved the safest for him. As it was, he saved Recalde, and went on thanking Providence for having induced the English to let him alone.

III

On Friday the 12th the Armada passed the mouth of the Forth. Howard had followed so far, expecting that it might seek shelter there. But it went by with a leading wind. He knew then that till another season they would see no more of it, so put about and returned to Margate.

Relieved of his alarming presence, the Spaniards were

able to look into their condition and to prepare for a voyage which might now be protracted for several weeks. The Duke himself was short and sullen, shut himself in his state-room and refused to see or speak with anyone. Diego Florez became the practical commander, and had to announce the alarming news that the provisions taken in at Corunna had been wholly inadequate, and that at the present rate of consumption they would all be starving in a fortnight. The state of the water supply was worst of all, for the casks had most of them been destroyed by the English guns. The salt meat and fish were gone or spoilt. The rations were reduced to biscuit. Half a pound of biscuit, a pint of water, and half a pint of wine were all that each person could be allowed. Men and officers fared alike; and on this miserable diet, and unprovided with warm clothing, which they never needed in their own sunny lands, the crews of the Armada were about to face the cold and storms of the northern latitudes.

They had brought with them many hundreds of mules and horses. They might have killed and eaten them, and so mitigated the famine. But they thought of nothing. The wretched animals were thrown overboard to save water, and the ships in the rear sailed on through floating carcases—a ghastly emblem of the general wreck. The Duke felt more than the officers gave him credit for. In a letter which he despatched to Philip on August 21, in a forlorn hope that it might reach Spain somehow, he described the necessity which had been found of cutting down the food, and the consequent suffering.[1] That alone would have

[1] 'Por ser tan pocos los bastimentos que se llevan, que, para que puedan durar un mes, y el agua, se han acortado las raciones generalmente sin exceptuar persona, porque no perezcan, dando se media libra de biscocho, y un cuartillo de agua, y medio de vino sin ninguna otra cosa, con que se va padeciendo lo que V.M. podra juzgar.' Medina Sidonia to Philip August 21. Duro, vol. ii. p. 226.

been enough, for the men were wasting to a shadow of themselves, but besides there were three thousand sick with scurvy and dysentery, and thousands more with wounds uncured.

But if he sympathised with the men's distresses he did not allow his sympathy to be seen. He knew that he was blamed for what had happened, that he was distrusted and perhaps despised; and while keeping aloof from everyone, he encouraged their resentment by deserving it. Many persons might have been in fault. But there is a time for all things, and those wretched days, wretched mainly through the Duke's own blunders, were not a time for severity; yet it pleased him, while secluded in his cabin, to order an inquiry into the conduct of the commanders who had lost their anchors at Calais, and had failed to support him in the action which followed. He accused them of cowardice. He held a court-martial on them and ordered twenty to be executed. Death with most was exchanged for degradation and imprisonment, but two poor wretches were selected on whom the sentence was to be carried out, as exceptionally culpable. When he had decided to fly, the Duke had ordered that the whole fleet should follow and not go in advance of the San Martin. A Captain Cuellar and a Captain Christobal de Avila had strayed for a few miles ahead, intending, as the Duke perhaps supposed, to desert. Don Christobal, to the disgust of the fleet, was executed with a parade of cruelty. He was hanged on the yard of a pinnace, which was sent round the squadrons with Don Christobal's body swinging upon it before it was thrown into the sea. Cuellar's fate was to have been the same. He commanded a galleon called the San Pedro. He had been in the action and had done his duty. His ship had been cut up. He himself had not slept for ten days, having been in every fight since

the Armada entered the Channel. When all was over, and the strain had been taken off, he had dropped off exhausted. His sailing master, finding the San Pedro leaking, had gone in advance to lay-to and examine her hurts. Exasperated at the disobedience to his directions, the Duke sent for Cuellar, refused to listen to his defence, and ordered him to be hanged. Don Francisco de Bobadilla with difficulty obtained his life for him, but he was deprived of his ship and sent under arrest to another galleon, to encounter, as will be seen, a singular adventure.

The display of temper, added to the general conviction of the Duke's unfitness for his place, may have been the cause of the dispersal of the Armada which immediately followed. The officers felt that they must shift for themselves. The fleet held together as far as the Orkneys. The intention was to hold a northerly course till the 60th parallel. Assuming the wind to remain in the west, the pilots held that from this altitude the galleons could weather the Irish coast at sufficient distance to be out of danger—to weather Cape Clear, as they described it, but the Cape Clear which they meant—a glance at the map will show it—was not the point so named at present, but Clare Island, the extreme western point of Mayo. The high-built, broad and shallow galleons were all execrable sailers, but some sailed worse than others, and some were in worse condition than others. They passed the Orkneys together, and were then separated in a gale. The nights were lengthening, the days were thick and misty, and they lost sight of each other. Two or three went north as far as the Faroe Islands, suffering pitifully from cold and hunger. Detachments, eight or ten together, made head as they could, working westward, against wind and sea, the men dying daily in hundreds. The San Martin, with sixty ships in company, kept far out into the Atlantic, and they

rolled down towards the south dipping their mainyards in the tremendous seas. On August 21, the day on which the Duke wrote to Philip, they were two hundred miles west of Cape Wrath, amidst the tumult of the waters. 'The Lord,' he said, 'had been pleased to send them a fortune different from that which they had looked for; but since the expedition had been undertaken from the beginning in the Lord's service, all doubtless had been ordered in the manner which would conduce most to the King's advantage and the Lord's honour and glory. The fleet had suffered so heavily that they had considered the best thing which they could do would be to bring the remains of it home in safety. Their finest ships had been lost, their ammunition had been exhausted, and the enemy's fleet was too strong for what was left. The English guns were heavier than the Spanish; their sailing powers immeasurably superior. The sole advantage of the Spaniards was in small arms, and these they could not use, as the enemy refused to close. Thus, with the assent of the vice-admirals, he was making for home round the Scotch Isles. The food was short; the dead were many; the sick and wounded more. He himself could but pray that they might soon reach a port, as their lives depended on it.'

This letter, though sent off out of the Western Ocean, did eventually reach the King's hands. Meanwhile the weather grew wilder and wilder. The number of vessels which could bear up against the gales diminished daily, and one by one they fell to leeward on the fatal Irish shore. Leaving Medina Sidonia and the survivors which reached home along with him, the story must follow those which were unequal to the work required of them. The Spaniards were excellent seamen. They had navigated ships no worse than those which were lumbering through the Irish seas, among West Indian hurricanes and through the

tempests at Cape Horn. But these poor wretches were but shadows of themselves; they had been poisoned at the outset with putrid provisions; they were now famished and sick, their vessels' sides torn to pieces by cannon-shot and leaking at a thousand holes, their wounded spars no longer able to bear the necessary canvas; worst of all, their spirits broken. The superstitious enthusiasm with which they started had turned into a fear that they were the objects of a malignant fate with which it was useless to struggle. Some had been driven among the Western Islands of Scotland; the ships had been lost; the men who got on shore alive made their way to the Low Countries. But these were the few. Thirty or forty other vessels had attempted in scattered parties to beat their way into the open sea. But, in addition to hunger, the men were suffering fearfully for want of water, and perhaps forced the pilots either to make in for the land, or else to turn south before they had gained sufficient offing. Thus, one by one all these drove ashore, either on the coast of Sligo or Donegal, or in Clew Bay or Galway Bay, or the rocks of Clare and Kerry, and the wretched crews who escaped the waves found a fate only more miserable. The gentlemen and officers, soiled and battered though they were, carried on land such ornaments as they possessed. The sailors and soldiers had received their pay at Corunna, and naturally took it with them in their pockets. The wild Irish were tempted by the plunder. The gold chains and ducats were too much for their humanity, and hundreds of half-drowned wretches were dragged out of the waves only to be stripped and knocked on the head, while those who escaped the Celtic skenes and axes, too weak and exhausted to defend themselves, fell into the hands of the English troops who were in garrison in Connaught. The more intelligent of the Irish chiefs hurried down to prevent their countrymen from disgracing

themselves. They stopped the robbing and murdering, and a good many unfortunate victims found shelter in their castles. Such Spaniards as were taken prisoners by the English met a fate of which it is impossible to read without regret. Flung as they were upon the shore, ragged, starved, and unarmed, their condition might have moved the pity of less generous foes. But the age was not pitiful. Catholic fanaticism had declared war against what it called heresy, and the heretics had to defend their lives and liberties by such means as offered themselves. There might be nothing to fear from the Spanish prisoners in their present extremity, but if allowed to recover and find protection from Irish hospitality, they might and would become eminently dangerous. The number of English was small, far too small, to enable them to guard two or three thousand men. With the exception, therefore, of one or two officers who were reserved for ransom, all that were captured were shot or hanged on the spot.

The history of these unfortunates must be looked for in the English records rather than the Spanish. They never returned to Spain to tell their own story, and Captain Duro has little to say about them beyond what he has gathered from English writers. Among the documents published by him, however, there is an extraordinary narrative related by the Captain Cuellar who so nearly escaped hanging, a narrative which not only contains a clear account of the wreck of the galleons, but gives a unique and curious picture of the Ireland of the time.

The scene of the greatest destruction among the ships of the Armada was Sligo Bay. It is easy to see why. The coast on the Mayo side of it trends away seventy miles to the west as far as Achill and Clare Island, and ships embayed there in heavy south-westerly weather had no chance of escape. On one beach, five miles in length,

Sir Jeffrey Fenton counted eleven hundred dead bodies, and the country people told him, 'the like was to be seen in other places.' Sir William Fitzwilliam saw broken timber from the wrecks lying between Sligo and Ballyshannon 'sufficient to have built five of the largest ships in the world,' besides masts and spars and cordage, and boats bottom uppermost. Among the vessels which went ashore at this spot to form part of the ruin which Fitzwilliam was looking upon was a galleon belonging to the Levantine squadron, commanded by Don Martin de Aranda, to whose charge Cuellar had been committed when Bobadilla saved him from the yard-arm. Don Martin, after an ineffectual struggle to double Achill Island, had fallen off before the wind and had anchored in Sligo Bay in a heavy sea with two other galleons. There they lay for four days, from the first to the fifth of September, when the gale rising their cables parted, and all three drove on shore on a sandy beach among the rocks. Nowhere in the world does the sea break more violently than on that cruel shelterless strand. Two of the galleons went to pieces in an hour. The soldiers and sailors, too weak to struggle, were most of them rolled in the surf till they were dead and then washed up upon the shingle. Gentlemen and servants, nobles and common seamen, shared the same fate. Cuellar's ship had broken in two, but the forecastle held a little longer together than the rest, and Cuellar, clinging to it, watched his comrades being swept away and destroyed before his eyes. The wild Irish were down in hundreds stripping the bodies. Those who had come on shore with life in them fared no better. Some were knocked on the head, others had their clothes torn off and were left naked to perish of cold. Don Diego Enriquez, a high-born patrician, passed, with the Conde de Villafranca and sixty-five others, into his ship's tender carrying bags of ducats and jewels. They

went below, and fastened down the hatchway, hoping to be rolled alive on land. A huge wave turned the tender bottom upwards, and all who were in it were smothered. As the tide went back the Irish came with their axes and broke a hole open in search of plunder; while Cuellar looked on speculating how soon the same fate would be his own, and seeing the corpses of his comrades dragged out, stripped naked, and left to the wolves. His own turn came at last. He held on to the wreck till it was swept away, and he found himself in the water with a brother officer who had stuffed his pockets full of gold. He could not swim, but he caught a scuttle board as it floated by him and climbed up upon it. His companion tried to follow, but was washed off and drowned. Cuellar a few minutes later was tossed ashore, his leg badly cut by a blow from a spar in the surf. Drenched and bleeding as he was, he looked a miserable figure. The Irish, who were plundering the better dressed of the bodies, took no notice of him. He crawled along till he found a number of his countrymen who had been left with nothing but life, bare to their skins, and huddled together for warmth. Cuellar, who had still his clothes, though of course drenched, lay down among some rushes. A gentleman, worse off than he, for he was entirely naked, threw himself at his side too spent to speak. Two Irishmen came by with axes who, to Cuellar's surprise, cut some bushes, which they threw over them for a covering, and went on to join in the pillage on the shore. Cuellar, half dead from cold and hunger, fell asleep. He was woke by a troop of English horsemen galloping by for a share in the spoil. He called his comrade but found him dead, while all round the crows and wolves were busy over the naked carcases. Something like a monastery was visible not far off. Cuellar limped along till he reached it. He found it deserted. The roof of the chapel had been lately

burnt. The images of the saints lay tumbled on the ground. In the nave twelve Spaniards were hanging from the rafters. The monks had fled to the mountains.

Sick at the ghastly spectacle, he crept along a path through a wood, when he came upon an old woman who was hiding her cattle from the English. Her cabin was not far distant, but she made signs to him to keep off as there were enemies in occupation there. Wandering hopelessly on, he fell in with two of his countrymen, naked and shivering. They were all famished, and they went back together to the sea, hoping to find some fragments of provisions washed on land. On the way they came on the body of Don Enriquez and stopped to scrape a hole in the sand and bury it. While they were thus employed a party of Irish came up, who pointed to a cluster of cabins and intimated that if they went there they would be taken care of. Cuellar was dead lame. His companions left him. At the first cottage which he reached, there was an old Irish 'savage,' an Englishman, a Frenchman, and a girl. The Englishman struck at him with a knife and gave him a second wound. They stripped him to his shirt, took a gold chain from him, which they found concealed under it, and a purse of ducats. They would have left him *en cueros*, like the rest, without a rag upon him, had not the girl interposed, who affected to be a Christian, 'though she was no more a Christian than Mahomet.' The Frenchman proved to be an old sailor who had fought at Terceira. In him the Spanish captain found some human kindness, for he bound up his leg for him and gave him some oatcakes with butter and milk. The Frenchman then pointed to a ridge of distant mountains. There, he said, was the country of the O'Rourke, a great chief, who was a friend of the King of Spain. O'Rourke would take care of him; many of his comrades had already gone thither for protection.

With his strength something restored by the food, Cuellar crawled along, stick in hand. At night he stopped at a hut where there was a lad who could speak Latin. This boy talked with him, gave him supper and a bundle of straw to sleep upon. About midnight the boy's father and brother came in, loaded with plunder from the wrecks. They, too, did him no hurt, and sent him forward in the morning with a pony and a guide. English soldiers were about, sent, as he conjectured, probably with truth, to kill all the Spaniards that they could fall in with. The first party that he met did not see him. With the second he was less fortunate. His guide saved his life by some means which Cuellar did not understand. But they beat him and took his shirt from him, the last of his garments that had been left. The boy and pony went off, and he thought then that the end was come and prayed God to finish with him and take him to His mercy. Forlorn as he was, however, he rallied his courage, picked up a piece of old matting, and with this and some plaited ferns made a shift to cover himself: thus costumed he went on to a hamlet at the side of a lake; the hovels of which it consisted were all empty; he entered the best-looking of them, found some fagots of oat-straw, and was looking about for a place to sleep among them, when three naked figures sprang suddenly up. He took them for devils, and in his extraordinary dress they thought the same of him; but they proved to have belonged to the wrecked galleons; one of them a naval officer, the other two soldiers. They explained mutually who they were, and then buried themselves in the oat-sheaves and slept. They remained there for warmth and concealment all the next day. At night, having wrapped themselves in straw, they walked on till they reached the dominions of the chief to whom they had been directed. O'Rourke himself was absent 'fighting

the English,' but his wife took them in, fed them, and allowed them to stay. As a particular favour she bestowed an old cloak upon Cuellar, which he found, however, to be swarming with lice. The hospitality was not excessive. A report reached him that a Spanish ship had put into Killybegs harbour, was refitting for sea, and was about to sail. He hurried down to join her, but she was gone. He learned afterwards that she had been wrecked and that all on board had perished.

He was now like a hunted wolf. The English deputy had issued orders that every Spaniard in the country must be given up to the Government. The Irish did not betray Cuellar, but they did not care to risk their necks by giving him shelter, and he wandered about through the winter in Sligo and Donegal, meeting with many strange adventures. His first friend was a poor priest, who was performing his functions among the Irish, in spite of the law, disguised as a layman. From this man he met with help. He worked next as a journeyman with a blacksmith, whose wife was a brute. The priest delivered him from these people, and carried him to a castle, which, from the decription, appears to have been on Lough Erne, and here, for the first time, he met with hearty hospitality, in the Irish understanding of the term. The owner of the castle was a gentleman. He recognised an ally in every enemy of England. He took Cuellar into his troop of retainers, and dressed him in the saffron mantle of the Irish gallowglass. For some weeks he was now permitted to rest and recover himself, and he spent the time in learning the manners of the people. The chief's wife was beautiful, unlike the blacksmith's, and the handsome and unfortunate Spanish officer was an interesting novelty. Besides the lady there were other girls in the castle, who came about him perhaps too ardently, asked him a thousand

questions, and at length insisted that he should examine their hands and tell their fortunes. He had learnt palmistry from the gipsies in his own land. His invention was ready. He spoke Latin, which they could understand, and he gathered from their lips broken fragments of their own Irish. At length, with his art and his attractiveness, he gives the reader to understand that he was inconveniently popular; men and women persecuted him with demands and attentions, and he had to throw himself on the protection of the chief himself. He describes the habits and character of the people as if he was writing of a fresh discovered island in the New World.

They lived, he said, like mere savages about the mountains. Their dwelling-places were thatched hovels. The men were large-limbed, well-shaped, and light as stags (*sueltos como corzos*). They took but one meal a day, and that at night. Their chief food was oatmeal and butter; their drink sour milk, for want of anything better, and never water, though they had the best in the world. The usquebaugh Cuellar does not mention. On feast days they dined on underdone boiled meat, which they ate without bread or salt. The costume of the men was a pair of tight-fitting breeches with a goatskin jacket; over this a long mantle. Their hair they wore low over their eyes. They were strong on their legs, could walk great distances, and were hardy and enduring. They, or such of them as he had known, paid no obedience to the English. They were surrounded by swamps and bogs, which kept the English at a distance, and there was constant war between the races. Even among themselves they were famous thieves. They robbed from each other, and every day there was fighting. If one of them knew that his neighbour had sheep or cow, he would be out at night to steal it, and kill the owner. Occasionally a fortunate robber

would have collected large herds and flocks, and then the English would come down on him, and he had to fly to the hills with wife, and children, and stock. Sheep and cattle were their only form of property. They had no clothes and no furniture. They slept on the ground on a bed of rushes, cut fresh as they wanted them, w f with rain or stiff with frost. The women were pre · at ill dressed. A shift or a mantle, and a handkerchief notted in front over the forehead, made their whole toilet; and on the women was thrown all the homework, which, after a fashion, they managed to do. The Irish professed to be Christians. Mass was said after the Roman rule. Their churches and houses of religion had been destroyed by the English, or by such of their own countrymen as had joined the English. In short, they were a wild lawless race, and everyone did as he liked. They wished well to the Spaniards because they knew them to be enemies of the English heretics, and had it not been for the friendliness which they had shown, not one of those who had come on shore would have survived. It was true at first they plundered and stripped them naked, and fine spoils they got out of the thirteen galleons which were wrecked in that part of the country; but as soon as they saw that the Spaniards were being killed by the English, they began to take care of them.

Such was Cuellar's general picture, very like what was drawn by the intruding Saxon, and has been denounced as calumny. Cuellar was, at any rate, impartial, and rather liked his hosts than otherwise. The Lord Deputy was alarmed at the number of fugitives who were said to be surviving. As the orders to surrender them had not been attended to, he collected a force in Dublin and went in person into the West to enforce obedience. Cuellar's entertainer had been especially menaced, and had to tell

his guests that he could help them no further. He must leave his castle and retreat himself with his family into the mountains, and the Spaniards must take care of themselves. Cuellar calls the castle Manglana; local antiquaries may be able to identify the spot. It stood on a promontory projecting into a long, deep, and broad lake, and was covered on the land side by a swamp. It could not be taken without boats or artillery, and the Spaniards offered to remain and defend it if the chief would leave them a few muskets and powder, with food for a couple of months. There were nine of them. The chief agreed, and let them have what they wanted; and, unless Cuellar lies, he and his friends held 'Manglana' for a fortnight against a force of eighteen hundred English, when God came to their help by sending such weather that the enemy could not any longer keep the field.

The chief, finding the value of such auxiliaries, wished to keep them permanently at his side, and offered Cuellar his sister for a wife. Cuellar, however, was longing for home. He supposed that if he could reach Scotland he could cross easily from thence to Flanders. One night after Christmas he slipped away and made for Antrim, travelling, seemingly, only in the dark, and hiding during day. He was in constant danger, as the tracks were watched, and suspected persons were seized and searched. He got as far as the Giant's Causeway; there he heard particulars of the wreck of the ship which he had tried to join at Killybegs. It was a galeass with Alonzo de Leyva on board and two or three hundred others with him. They were all dead, and Cuellar saw the relics of them which the people had collected on the shore. Alonzo de Leyva was the best loved of all the Spaniards in the fleet, and the sight of the spot where he had perished was a fresh distress. He was afraid to approach a port lest he should be seized and hanged. For

six weeks he was hid away by some women, and after that by a bishop, who was a good Christian, though dressed like a savage. This bishop had a dozen Spaniards with him, fed, clothed, and said Mass for them, and at last found a boat to carry them across the Channel. They went, and after a three days' struggle with the sea contrived to land in Argyllshire. They had been led to hope for help from James. Cuellar says that they were entirely mistaken. James never gave them a bawbee, and would have handed them over to the English if he had not been afraid of the resentment of the Scotch Catholic nobles. The Calvinist Lowlanders showed them scanty hospitality. The Prince of Parma was informed of their condition, and agreed with a Flemish merchant to bring over to him all the Spaniards, now numerous, who were on Scotch soil, at five ducats a head. Even yet misfortune had not tired of persecuting them. In their passage they were chased and fired on by a Dutch frigate. They had to run ashore, where they were intercepted by the Hollanders, and all but Cuellar and two of his companions were killed.

So ends the Spanish captain's story. The wide calamities involving multitudes are but the aggregate of the sufferings of each individual of whom the multitude is composed. Cuellar came off luckily compared with most of his companions. Each of the twenty-nine thousand men who sailed in July from Corunna would have had to relate a tale of misery at least as pitiful as his, and the worst of all was that no one's neck was wrung for it.

The sixty galleons which remained with the Duke till the end of August were parted again by a south-westerly gale, off the point of Kerry. The Duke himself passed so far out to sea that he did not see the Irish coast at all. Recalde, with two large ships besides his own, had come round Dunmore Head, near the land. His crews were dying for

want of water. He seems to have known Dingle. Dr. Sanders, with the Pope's contingent, had landed there eight years before, and a statement in an account of Recalde's life that he had once carried a thousand men to the coast of Ireland, refers probably to that occasion. At all events, he was aware that there was a harbour in Dingle Bay, and he made for it with his consorts. One of them, 'Our Lady of the Rosary,' was wrecked in Blasket Sound. She carried seven hundred men when she sailed out of Lisbon. Two hundred out of the seven were alive in her when she struck the rock, and every one of them perished, save a single lad. Recalde, with the other galleon, anchored in the Dingle estuary, and sent in to the town a passionate entreaty to be allowed to fill his water-casks. The fate of the Papal troops, who had been all executed a few miles off, had so frightened the Irish there that they did not dare to consent. The English account states that Recalde had to sail as he was, to live or die. The belief in Spain was that he took the water that he wanted by force. Perhaps the inhabitants were not entirely inhuman, and did not interfere. He saved the lives for the moment of the wretched men under his charge, though most of them perished when they reached their homes; he brought back his ship to Corunna, and there died himself two days after his arrival, worn out by shame and misery.

Oquendo also reached Spain alive. The persevering west winds drove him down the Bay of Biscay, and he made his way into St. Sebastian, where he had a wife and children: but he refused to see them; he shut himself into a solitary room, turned his face to the wall, and ended like Recalde, unable to outlive the disgrace of the gallant navy which he had led so often into victory. They had done all that men could do. On the miserable day when their commander decided to turn his back and fly they would

have forced him upon a more honourable course, and given the forlorn adventure an issue less utterly ignominious. But their advice had been rejected. They had sailed away from an enemy whose strength at most was not greater than theirs. They had escaped from a battle with a human foe to a more fatal war with the elements, and they had seen their comrades perish round them, victims of folly and weakness. The tremendous catastrophe broke their hearts, and they lay down and died. Oquendo's 'Capitana' had been blown up after the fight at Plymouth. By a strange fatality the ship which brought him home blew up also in the harbour at St. Sebastian. The explosion may have been the last sound which reached his failing sense. The stragglers came in one by one; sixty-five ships only of the hundred and thirty who, in July, had sailed out of Corunna full of hope and enthusiasm. In those hundred and thirty had been twenty-nine thousand human creatures, freshly dedicated to what they called the service of their Lord. Nine or ten thousand only returned; a ragged remnant, shadows of themselves, sinking under famine and fever and scurvy, which carried them off like sheep with the rot. When they had again touched Spanish soil, a wail of grief rose over the whole peninsula, as of Rachel weeping for her children; yet above it all rose the cry, Where was Alonzo de Leyva? Where was the flower of Spanish chivalry? Cuellar knew his fate; but Cuellar was with his Irish chief far away. Weeks, even months, passed before certain news arrived, and rumour invented imaginary glories for him. He had rallied the missing galleons, he had fallen in with Drake, had beaten and captured him, and had sunk half the English fleet. Vain delusion! De Leyva, like Oquendo and Recalde, had done all which could be done by man, and God had not interposed to help him. He had fought his 'Rata Coronada' till her spars were shot away and her

timbers pierced like a sieve. She became water-logged in the gales on the Irish coast. A second galleon and a surviving galeass were in his company. The 'Rata' and the galleon drove ashore. De Leyva, in the galeass, made Killybegs harbour, and landed there with fourteen hundred men. It was the country of the O'Neil. They were treated with the generous warmth which became the greatest of the Irish chieftains. But their presence was known in Dublin. O'Neil was threatened, and De Leyva honourably refused to be an occasion of danger to him. He repaired the galeass at Killybegs. The October weather appeared to have settled at last, and he started again with as many of his people as the galeass would carry to make the coast of Scotland. She had passed round the north of Donegal, she had kept along the land and had almost reached the Giant's Causeway, when she struck a rock and went to pieces, and De Leyva and his companions went the way of the rest.

The men who came back seemed as if they had been smitten by a stroke from which they could not rally. One of them describes pathetically the delight with which, after those desperate storms, and hunger and cold and thirst, they felt the warmth of the Spanish sun again; saw Spanish grapes in the gardens at Santander, and the fruit hanging on the trees; had pure bread to eat and pure water to drink. But the change brought no return of health. For the first weeks they were left on board their ships, no preparation on shore having been made to receive them. When the mortality was found rather to increase than diminish, they were moved to hospitals, but they died still by hundreds daily, as if destiny or Providence was determined to sweep off the earth every innocent remnant of the shattered expedition, while those who were really to blame escaped unpunished.

Medina Sidonia had been charged by Philip to report his progress to him as often as messengers could be sent off. He had written when off the Lizard before his first contact with the enemy. He had written again on August 21 among the Atlantic rollers, when he believed that he was bringing home his charge at least safe if not victorious. On September 22 he arrived at Santander, and on the 23rd reported briefly the close of the tragedy so far as it was then known to him. The weather, he said, had been terrible since he last wrote. Sixty-one vessels were then with him. They had held tolerably well together till September 18, when they were caught in another gale, and fifty of them had gone he knew not where. Eleven only had remained with himself. They had made the coast near Corunna, and had signalled for help, but none had come off. They had then struggled on to Santander and were lying there at anchor. He had himself gone on shore, being broken down by suffering. The miseries which they had experienced had exceeded the worst that had ever before been heard of. In some ships there had not been a drop of water for fourteen days. A hundred and eighty of the crew of the 'San Martin' had died, the rest were down with putrid fever. Of his personal attendants all were dead but two. There was not food enough left on board for those who were alive to last two days. The Duke 'blessed the Lord for all that He had ordained;' but prayed the King to see instantly to their condition, and to send them money, for they had not a maravedi in the fleet. He was himself too ill to do anything. There was no person whose duty it was to help them, neither inspector, purveyor, nor paymaster. They could obtain nothing that they wanted. He had written to the Archbishop of Burgos for assistance in establishing a hospital.[1]

[1] The Duke of Medina Sidonia to Philip, September 23, from Santander.

The opinion in Spain was savagely hostile to the Duke. It was thought that if he had possessed the feelings of a gentleman, he would have died of the disgrace like Oquendo and Recalde. The Duke, so far from feeling that he was himself to blame, considered that he above the rest had most reason to complain of having been forced into a position which he had not sought and for which he had protested his unfitness. Being Lord High Admiral, his business was to remain with the fleet, however ill he might be, till some other responsible officer could be sent to relieve him. His one desire was to escape from the sight of ships and everything belonging to them, and hide himself and recover his spirits in his palace at San Lucar. Not Sancho, when he left his island, could be in greater haste to rid himself of his office and all belonging to it.

On September 27, before an answer could arrive from Philip, he wrote again to Secretary Idiaquez. Almost all the sailors were dead, he said. Many of the ships were dismasted; no one could believe the state in which they were. Idiaquez must look to it. For himself, his health was broken; he was unfit for further duty, and even if he was perfectly well he would never go on shipboard again. He was absolutely without any knowledge either of navigation or of war, and the King could have no object in forcing him to continue in a service from which the State could derive no possible advantage. He begged that he might be thought of no more in connection with the navy, and that, since the Lord had not been pleased to call him to that vocation, he might not be compelled to return in a situation of which he could not, as he had many times explained, conscientiously discharge the duties. His Majesty, he said, could not surely wish the destruction of a faithful subject. With sea affairs he neither could nor would meddle any

further, though it should cost him his head.[1] Better so than fail in an office of the duties of which he was ignorant, and where he had to be guided by the advice of others, in whose honesty of intention he could feel no confidence.

The last allusion was of course to Diego Florez, on whom, since it was necessary to punish someone, the blame was allowed to fall. In justice, if justice was to have a voice in the matter, the person really guilty was Don Philip. Of the subordinates, Diego Florez was probably the most in fault, and he was imprisoned in the Castle of Burgos. For the rest, Philip was singularly patient, his conscience perhaps telling him that if he was to demand a strict account he would have to begin with himself. The popular story of the composure with which he heard of the fate of the Armada is substantially true, though rather too dramatically pointed. The awful extent of the catastrophe became known to him only by degrees, and the end of Alonzo de Leyva, which distressed him most of all, he only heard of at Christmas.

To the Duke's letter he replied quietly and affectionately, without a syllable of reproach. Unlike Elizabeth, who left the gallant seamen who had saved her throne to die of want and disease in the streets of Margate, and had to be reminded that the pay of those who had been killed in her service was still due to their relations, Philip ordered clothes, food, medicine, everything that was needed, to be sent down in hottest haste to Corunna and Santander. The widows and orphans of the dead sailors and soldiers were sought out and pensioned at the cost of the State. To Medina Sidonia he sent the permission which the Duke had asked for, to leave the fleet and go home. He could

[1] 'En las cosas de la mer, por ningun caso ni por alguna via trataré dellas, aunque me costase la cabeza.'

not in fairness have blamed the commander-in-chief for having failed in a situation for which he had protested his incompetence. The fault of Philip as a king and statesman was a belief in his own ability to manage things. In sending out the Armada he had set in motion a mighty force, not intending it to be used mightily, but that he might accomplish with it what he regarded as a masterstroke of tame policy. He had selected Medina Sidonia as an instrument who would do what he was told and would make no rash experiments. And the effect was to light a powder magazine which blew to pieces the naval power of Spain. It is to his credit, however, that he did not wreak his disappointment upon his instruments, and endured patiently what had befallen him as the Will of God. The Will of God, indeed, created a difficulty. The world had been informed so loudly that the Armada was going on the Lord's work, the prayers of the Church had been so long and so enthusiastic, and a confidence in what the Lord was to do had been generated so universally, that when the Lord had not done it, there was at once a necessity for acknowledging the judgment, and embarrassment in deciding the terms in which the truth was to be acknowledged. Philip's formal piety provided a solution which might have been missed by a more powerful intellect, and on the 13th of October the following curious letter was addressed by him to the bishops and archbishops throughout his dominions :—

Most Reverend,—The uncertainties of naval enterprises are well known, and the fate which has befallen the Armada is an instance in point. You will have already heard that the Duke of Medina Sidonia has returned to Santander, bringing back with him part of the fleet. Others of the ships have reached various ports, some of them having suffered severely from their long and arduous voyage. We are bound to give praise to God for all

things which He is pleased to do. I on the present occasion have given thanks to Him for the mercy which He has shown. In the foul weather and violent storms to which the Armada has been exposed, it might have experienced a worse fate; and that the misfortune has not been heavier is no doubt due to the prayers which have been offered in its behalf so devoutly and continuously.

These prayers must have entailed serious expense and trouble on those who have conducted them. I wish you, therefore, all to understand that while I am, so far, well pleased with your exertions, they may now cease. You may wind up in the cathedrals and churches of your dioceses with a solemn Thanksgiving Mass on any day which you may appoint, and for the future I desire all ecclesiastics and other devout persons to continue to commend my actions to the Lord in their secret devotions, that He may so direct them as shall be for His own service, the exaltation of His Church, the welfare and safety of Christendom, which are the objects always before me.

From the Escurial: October 13, 1588.[1]

Medina Sidonia reconsidered his resolution to have no more to do with ships and fighting. He was continued in his office of Lord High Admiral; he was again appointed Governor of Cadiz, and he had a second opportunity of measuring himself against English seamen, with the same result as before. Essex went into Cadiz in 1596, as Drake had gone in 1587. The Duke acted in the same manner, and withdrew to Seville to seek for reinforcements. He ventured back only after the English had gone, and was again thanked by his master for his zeal and courage. As if this was not enough, Philip, in 1598, raised him to the rank of Consejero altísimo de Estado y Guerra, Supreme Councillor in Politics and War. Who can wonder that under such a King the Spanish Empire went to wreck?

The people were less enduring. Clamours were raised that he had deserted the fleet at Santander, that he had

[1] Duro, vol. ii. p. 314.

shown cowardice in action, that he had neglected the counsels of his wisest admirals, that he was as heartless as he was incapable, and that, leaving the seamen and soldiers to die, he had hastened home to his luxuries at San Lucar. In reality he had gone with the King's permission, because he was useless and was better out of the way. He was accused of having carried off with him a train of mules loaded with ducats. He had told Philip that he had not brought home a maravedi, and if he had really taken money he would have done it less ostentatiously and with precautions for secrecy.

But nothing could excuse him to Spain. Every calumny found credit. He had shown 'cobardia y continual pavor y miedo de morir, avaricia, dureza y crueldad'—cowardice, constant terror and fear of death, avarice, harshness, and cruelty. His real faults were enough without piling others on him of which he was probably innocent. With or without his will, he had been in the thickest and hottest parts of the hardest engagements, and the 'San Martin' had suffered as severely as any ship in the fleet. He knew nothing of the work which he was sent to do; that is probably the worst which can justly be said of him; and he had not sought an appointment for which he knew that he was unfit. But an officer who tried to defend him was obliged to admit that it would have been happy for his country if the Duke had never been born; that he threw away every chance which was offered him, and that he talked and consulted when acts and not words were wanted.

His journey home across Castile was a procession of ignominy. The street boys in Salamanca and Medina del Campo pelted him with stones; crowds shouted after him 'A las gallinas, á las almadradas'—'To the hens and the tunnies'—the tunnies being the fattest and the most timid

of fish, and the tunny fishing being a monopoly of his dukedom. He was told that he had disgraced his illustrious ancestors, and that had he the spirit of a man he would not have outlived his shame.

History does not record the reception which he met with from his wife when he reached his palace.

ANTONIO PEREZ: AN UNSOLVED HISTORICAL RIDDLE[1]

One day early in the spring of the year 1590, while Spain was still bleeding from the destruction of the Great Armada, Mass was being sung in the church of the Dominican convent at Madrid. The candles were burning, the organ was pealing, the acolytes were swinging the censers, and the King's confessor was before the altar in his robes, when a woman, meanly dressed, rushed forward amidst the fumes of the incense. Turning to the priest, she said: 'Justice! I demand justice; I demand that you hear me! Are you deaf, that I come so often to you and you will not listen? Then I appeal to One who will listen; I appeal to Thee my God who art here present; I call on God to be my witness and my judge; He knows the wrongs which I suffer. Let Him punish yonder man who is my oppressor.'

The confessor turned pale as death. He stood speechless for a few moments. He then beckoned to the attendants. 'Bid the lady prioress come hither,' he said, 'and the sisterhood, and this woman's sister, who is one of them. Say I require their presence.'

The lady mother came fluttering with her flock behind her. They gathered to the grating which divided the chancel from the convent precincts.

'Holy mother,' the confessor said, 'this lady here present charges me on my soul and conscience. She calls on God to judge her cause, and she clamours for redress.

[1] *Nineteenth Century*, April, May, 1883.

I do not wonder; I should wonder rather if she held her peace. But what can I do that I have left undone? I have told the King that it is his duty to despatch the business of the lady's husband and restore him to his family; what would she have from me more?'

'I would have this much more, señor,' the lady replied. 'If the King will not do what you command him, refuse him absolution and withdraw to your cell. You will be nearer heaven there, than where you now stand. As the King's confessor you are his judge. The King is the offender; I am the injured woman of St. Luke's Gospel. The King may wear the crown on his head; but you are higher than he.'

The confessor could not answer her.

The scene shifts to the reception hall of Rodrigo Vasquez, the President of the High Court of Justice. The president was a grave, dignified man, seventy years old. Before him stood a family of children, the eldest a girl of sixteen, the little ones holding her hands or clinging to her dress.

The girl did not seem daunted by the presence in which she stood. 'Your lordship,' she said, 'has promised us this, that, and the other; you tell us one day that something shall be done on the morrow, and then the next, and the next, as if a last "morrow" there would never be. You have brought our home to desolation. You have deceived a girl like me, and you think it a grand victory, a glorious distinction. You thirst, it seems, for our blood; well, then, you shall have it. Old men, it is said, go again to the breast for milk to keep the life in them. You require blood, fresh from the veins of its owners. We had rather not be swallowed piecemeal, so we are come all to you together. You perhaps would prefer to linger over us, but

we cannot wait. Let your lordship make an end with us. Here we are.'

Don Rodrigo started out of his chair. He marched up the hall, and down, and then to the four corners. He twisted his fingers, he crossed his arms. He appealed to an old aunt and uncle who had brought the children.

'Señora, señor,' he said, 'I beseech you make that young woman hold her peace, and say no more.'

The young woman would not hold her peace.

'Pray sit down, your lordship,' she said; 'pray be calm. We are young; some of us were born, so to say, but yesterday. But you have made our lives a burden to us. Finish the work; take our blood, and let our souls depart from this miserable prison.'

These two incidents, if the children's father wrote the truth, happened precisely as I have described them, and are as literal facts as usually pass for history. Perhaps they are not exaggerated at all. The priest in the Dominican convent was Diego de Chaves, spiritual adviser to Philip the Second. The woman before the altar was Juana de Coello, wife of Antonio Perez, his Majesty's Secretary of State and confidential minister. The girl in the Court of Justice was his daughter Doña Gregoria, and the little ones were her brothers and sisters.

What strange cause could have wrought a mother and child into a state of passion so unnatural?

For three centuries after the Reformation, Philip the Second was the evil demon of Protestant tradition. Every action which could be traced to him was ascribed to the darkest motives. He was like some ogre or black enchanter sitting in his den in the Escurial, weaving plots for the misery of mankind, in close communion and correspondence with his master the Antichrist of Rome. He was the sworn enemy of the light which was rising over Europe;

he was the assassin of his subjects abroad; he was a tyrant at home, and even in his own household; he was believed universally to have murdered his own son, and if not to have murdered his wife, to have driven her to death with a broken heart. The Inquisition was his favourite instrument, and his name has been handed down through modern history by the side of the most detestable monsters who ever disgraced a throne.

All this violence of censure was perfectly natural. Men engaged in a deadly struggle for what they regard as a sacred cause are seldom charitable to their adversaries. It was the Spanish power indisputably which stemmed the Reformation, and more than once was near extinguishing it. The conflict was desperate and at last savage, and deeds were done which have left a stain on all who were concerned in them.

But as time has gone on, and as it has appeared that neither Lutheranism nor Calvinism nor Anglicanism can be regarded as a final revelation, we have been able to review the history of the sixteenth century in a calmer temper. For a thousand years the doctrines of the Catholic Church had been guarded by the civil power as the most precious of human possessions. New ideas on such subjects, shaking as they do the foundations of human society, may be legitimately resisted on their first appearance from better motives than hatred of truth; and although, in a strife so protracted and so deadly, evil passions dressed themselves in sacred colours, and crimes were committed which we may legitimately assign to the devil, yet it has been recognised that, on fair grounds of principle, right-thinking men might naturally have taken opposite sides, and that Catholics as well as Protestants might have been acting on conscientious convictions. The dust has settled a little, the spiritual atmosphere has cleared itself, and

among the consequences the cloud which hung over Philip the Second has partially lifted. The countrymen of Cervantes were not a nation of mere bigots; yet it is clear that the whole Spanish people went with the King enthusiastically in defence of the Church, and complained only when his *pié de plomo*, his foot of lead that he was so proud of, would not move fast enough. The romance of Don Carlos has gone into the air of which it was made. Don Carlos is known now to have been a dangerous lunatic, whom it was necessary to cage like a wild animal; the exact manner of his death is unknown; but his father acted throughout by the advice of the Council of State, and it was by their advice also that so distressing a secret was concealed from public curiosity. As we look at Philip with more impartial attention, the figure comes out before us of a painstaking, laborious man, prejudiced, narrow-minded, superstitious, with a conceit of his own abilities not uncommon in crowned heads, and frequently with less justification, but conscientious from his own point of view, and not without the feelings of a gentleman.

I purpose to reconstruct on these more tolerant lines the story of the relations between Philip the Second and Antonio Perez which have so long perplexed historical inquirers—on the surface a mere palace intrigue, but developing from its peculiar features into a nine days' wonder throughout Europe, and occasioning, if not causing, the overthrow of the constitutional liberties of Aragon.

Students of the history of the sixteenth century must be familiar with the name of Gonzalo Perez. He was State Secretary to Charles the Fifth, and his signature stands at the bottom of the page on thousands of Charles's despatches which are now extant. When the Emperor abdicated, Gonzalo remained in office with Philip, and had been forty years in the public service when he died. Antonio

Perez passed as Gonzalo's natural son. He was born in 1542, and was legitimatised immediately by an Imperial diploma. There were those who said, and spoke of it as notorious, that Antonio was not Gonzalo's son at all, but the son of Ruy Gomez, Prince of Eboli and Duke of Pastraña, Philip's favourite minister. Ruy Gomez, at any rate, took charge of the boy, removed him from school, brought him up in his own family, and introduced him into a public department. Being quick and brilliant, he was rapidly promoted; and when Ruy Gomez died in 1567 he left Antonio, at the age of twenty-five, chief secretary to the Council of State with a salary of four thousand ducats a year, in addition to which, and as a sinecure, he was Protonotary of Sicily with two thousand ducats a year. A rise so swift implied extraordinary private influence, or extraordinary personal qualities; and this was but the beginning of his fortunes. On losing Ruy Gomez, Philip took Perez as his own confidential secretary; and along with him another youth, Juan de Escovedo, who had also been a pupil of Ruy Gomez, and had been brought up at Perez's side. The two young men had been, and still continued, intimate personal friends.

The Spanish administration was divided into separate councils, the secretaries of which were each in close relation with the King, who insisted on knowing all that was going on. Besides these there were the secretaries who deciphered despatches, who were thus admitted into State mysteries and were necessarily treated with confidence. But of the whole number Antonio Perez and Escovedo were nearest to the King, and Perez the closer of the two. He and he alone was admitted into the interior labyrinths of Philip's mind.

He was thus a person of extraordinary consequence. He was courted by great men in Church and State. The

Italian princes sent him presents to advance their interests. He was the dispenser of royal favours. He treated dukes as his equals, and the splendour in which he lived was envied and criticised; but his legitimate income was considerable; in all countries in that age influential statesmen accepted homage in the shape of offerings; and, considering the opportunities the favoured secretary had, he does not seem to have exceptionally abused them.

Perez being thus upon the stage, we introduce a more considerable figure, Don John of Austria, the King's brother, illegitimate son of Charles the Fifth. An illegitimate prince is always in a delicate position, especially when his father happens to have brought him up as a real one. He is of royal blood, but without the rights belonging to it. He is uncertain of his rank, and may generally be presumed to be discontented. But Philip had shown no suspicion of his brother. He had trusted him, employed him, refused him no opportunities which he could have desired had he come more regularly into the world. Don John was chivalrous, ardent, ambitious. He had every quality which promised distinction, if in his youth he had been wisely guided. Ruy Gomez had furnished him with a secretary supposed to be prudence itself, Juan de Soto, who had been trained in the War Office. Thus accompanied when the Moors broke into insurrection, Don John was sent to Granada to reduce them. He did his work well; he became a popular favourite, and went next to command the allied Catholic fleet in the Mediterranean. De Soto only had given imperfect satisfaction. Don John had high-flying views for himself, and De Soto, it was feared, had not sufficiently discouraged them. Perez and Escovedo were instructed to give him an admonition, which they did, and with this friendly warning Don John and his secretary went their

way into Italy. The battle of Lepanto followed, and the young irregular Spanish prince blazed out into a hero of romance. Philip was a faithful son of the Church, and of the Pope in his spiritual capacity; but he was King of Naples and Sicily, with interests in the Peninsula not always identical with the interests of the court of Rome. Pius the Fifth, who had just then absolved England from its allegiance to Queen Elizabeth and believed it his mission to sweep away heresy, found in Don John a child much nearer to his heart. Don John was to be the Church's knight, the chosen soldier of the Lord, and immediately after Lepanto Pius had formed views for constituting him an independent sovereign. Tunis was to be the first scene of his greatness. The Emperor Charles had won immortal glory in his African campaign. De Soto had studied history and dreamt of the possibility of reviving the Carthaginian empire. Don John, set on by the Pope, re-fortified the Goleta, and transported on his own authority, out of Italy, the best part of the Spanish troops there, while the Papal Nuncio at Madrid requested Philip in Pope Pius's name to allow his brother to take the title of King of Tunis. The Spanish council knew better than his Holiness the value of the Emperor's African conquests. They had been a drain upon the treasury and the grave of thousands of their bravest men. Instead of indulging Don John they sent orders that the fortresses should be demolished and the troops withdrawn. But the order came too late. The Goleta was assaulted by the Turks in overwhelming numbers, and the garrison was cut off to a man. Philip had good reason to be displeased. The independent action of a commander cannot expect to be regarded, when unsuccessful, with especial leniency, nor were matters mended by the signs which his brother was manifesting of a restless ambition. He replied politely to

the Pope, however, that the establishment of a kingdom in Tunis was not at the time expedient. He found no fault with Don John, but laid the blame on bad advisers. He gently removed De Soto, leaving him as commissary-general of the army; and secretary Escovedo, who had been especially eloquent in the cabinet on De Soto's rashness, was sent to take his place as a safer companion to the prince.

Philip, however, was again unfortunate. The mischance at the Goleta had not been sufficient to dim the glories of Lepanto, or cool the hopes which so brilliant a victory had inspired. Don John was still persuaded that there were great things in store for him. It seemed as if he had an especial power of turning the heads of the secretaries, and Escovedo himself was soon embarked with him in a yet wilder scheme, to which the Pope and the Fates were beckoning the way.

After a struggle of ten years with his revolted subjects in the Low Countries, experience was beginning to teach Philip that it might be expedient to try milder ways with them. The Duke of Alva with his blood and iron had succeeded only in enlisting the whole of the seventeen provinces in a common rebellion, and if the war continued, the not unlikely end of it would be that Spain would finally lose them all. Holland and Zealand might become English, Belgium be absorbed into France, and the rest drift away into Germany. Bitter Catholic as he was, Philip had some qualities of a statesman. He had determined on an effort to make up the quarrel. The provinces were to be left with their constitutional rights, securities being given for the safety of religion. The Spanish army was to be withdrawn, and by abandoning attempts at coercion he hoped that it might not be too late to recover the hearts of the people.

To carry out this purpose he had pitched upon his brother Don John. The Emperor's memory was still honoured in the Low Countries. Charles had always been more a Fleming than a Spaniard. Don John, with his high rank and chivalrous reputation, was likely to be welcome there, or at least more welcome than any other person who could be selected; and an opportunity was thrown in his way, if he could use it, of winning laurels for himself more enduring than those which grow on battle-fields.

The opportunity, however, was one which a wise man only could appreciate. Young soldiers, especially soldiers who have been distinguished in arms, are seldom in love with constitutions: and to be governor at Brussels, with a council of successful rebels to tie his hands, was a situation which would have had no attraction for the victor of Lepanto, had there not been attached to it a more interesting possibility, the *empresa de Inglaterra*, the invasion and conquest of England. Philip himself had for a few years been called King of England. His name remains in our Statute Book. It was asserted by the Jesuits, it was believed by nine-tenths of the orthodox world, that the English Catholics, who were two-thirds of the nation, were waiting only for the help of a few thousand Spaniards to hurl from the throne the excommunicated usurper. The Queen of Scots, the Lady of Romance, was lying a prisoner in Sheffield Castle. To carry over the army when it left the Netherlands, to land in Yorkshire, to deliver the enchanted princess, and reign at her side with the Pope's blessing over an England restored to the faith—this was a glorious enterprise, fit to fire the blood of a Christian knight who was also the countryman of Don Quixote.

Don John was still in Italy when the offer of the appointment was made. If it was accepted, the King's order

to him was to proceed with his secretary directly to Brussels without returning to Spain. Not the pacification of Flanders, but the *empresa de Inglaterra* was the thought which rushed into the minds of Don John and Escovedo. Instead of setting out as they were enjoined, they went to Rome to consult Pope Pius's successor, to ask for his sanction, to ask for men, to ask for the title which had been borne by his brother, and all this without so much as going through the form of consulting his brother on the subject.

The Pope was of course delighted. If the attempt was made, God would not allow it to fail. The Jesuits had all along insisted that Philip's dilatoriness had alone allowed heresy to take root in England. Philip himself, who knew something of the country, was under no such illusion. Five years before he had consented unwillingly to the Ridolfi conspiracy. Elizabeth was then to have been assassinated; Spanish troops were to have landed, and the Queen of Scots was to have had the crown. The end of this fine project had been the execution of the Duke of Norfolk, the near escape from execution of Mary Stuart, a plague of pirates and privateers on the shores of Spanish America, and increased severities against the English Catholics. Of the Queen of Scots Philip had the very worst opinion. To strike a blow at that moment at Elizabeth could not fail to re-exasperate the Low Countries. English soldiers would land in Holland, English corsairs would swarm in the Atlantic and seize his treasure ships.

None of these considerations occurred to Don John or his fiery adviser. Escovedo was even hotter than his master, and audacious even to insolence. From Rome, in spite of his orders, he went to Madrid; and Don John soon after followed him thither, leaving their purposes to reach Philip indirectly from another quarter. This was in the summer of 1576, and we now approach the critical part of

the story. Shortly after Escovedo arrived at the court, the Nuncio sent one morning for Antonio Perez and inquired who a certain Escoda was. He had been all night, he said, deciphering a despatch from his Holiness. It referred to the 'enterprise of England' which was to be undertaken, if the King would allow it, by Don John. Escoda would inform him of the particulars.

'Escoda' could be no one but Escovedo. Perez carried his information to the King, who was again naturally extremely dissatisfied; the more so perhaps that Don John's popularity, and the general favour with which Spanish sentiment was likely to take up the adventure, obliged him to keep his displeasure to himself. Escovedo evidently thought himself secure. He addressed Philip in so rude a letter that Philip complained of it to Perez. 'If he had spoken to me as he has written,' the King said, 'I believe I could not have contained myself.' Words still more rash had fallen from Escovedo's lips. 'Don John, when master of England, was afterwards to take charge of Spain.'

Philip, like most small-minded men, shrank from meeting difficulties openly. He took no notice of Escovedo's impertinence, and he was afraid or unwilling to quarrel with his brother. He allowed the Nuncio to give him the Pope's message, and put him off with a vague answer. Don John ventured on ground still more delicate by asking for the 'chair and canopy,' the insignia of a legitimate prince of the blood royal. Even this Philip did not refuse. He required only that Don John should repair first to his government, compose the provinces, and withdraw the army. When this was done it would be time to think of 'English enterprises' and chairs and canopies.

Don John went, and it seemed as if all was smooth again. Escovedo was left at Madrid professedly to complete some defective arrangements for his master. Perhaps

Philip was uncertain whether he would trust so doubtful an adviser at his brother's side any more.

I am not writing the history of the wars in the Netherlands; it is enough to say that any hopes which had been built on the popularity of Don John were disappointed. The Estates refused to admit him as governor while the Spanish troops were in the fortresses; the troops were sullen, and would not move till they were paid their wages. Don John wished to remove them by sea, meaning, when they were in the Channel, to fly at England permitted or unpermitted; but Elizabeth and the Prince of Orange had their eyes open; the Estates insisted that the army should retire by land, and declined to advance a dollar till they were on the march. Don John, being without a friend whom he could trust, begged that Escovedo might rejoin him; and Escovedo, not without emphatic warnings and reiterated instructions, was allowed to go. The demands of the Estates were to be complied with to the letter. The army, at whatever sacrifice of bolder purposes, was to retire as the Estates desired. Philip required peace and was prepared for the price that was to be paid for it. The humiliation was too deep for Don John. For the knight-errant of the Church to retreat before a burgher council was ignominy. Something, he knew not what, must be done to repair it, and his thoughts went everywhere except where they ought to have been. Escovedo had no sooner arrived than a secret correspondence began again with the Pope. The religious war was raging in France. Don John might join the Duke of Guise and the Catholic League, and they might manage England between them. Then again he thought how he might satisfy his ambition at home. On February 3, 1577, Escovedo wrote to Perez to revive the request for the chair and canopy. It would give Don John a seat in the Council of State. He and

Perez and their friends the Archbishop of Toledo and the Marques de los Velez could rule the country as they pleased, and relieve his brother of the cares of government. On reflection he perhaps remembered that Philip might not be so anxious to be relieved; for some days after the purpose was changed; Don John was to take his army into France as an adventurer, and help the Duke of Guise to destroy the Huguenots. Victorious there, he could hold the Estates in check, the shame of the retreat would be covered, and the 'great design' on England could go forward. Royal princes are excused their follies at the expense of their servants. These feverish dreams were set down at the Escurial to Escovedo's account, and probably with excellent reason.

Meanwhile, Philip's orders were being obeyed. He had agreed to all which the Estates demanded. On February 12 the arrangement known as the 'Perpetual Edict' was provisionally accepted, and was forwarded to Madrid for ratification. Don John was distracted. He believed that he might write to Perez confidentially; for Perez, by Philip's order, had encouraged him to suppose so; and much eloquence has been expended on the assumed treachery. But kings may be judged too harshly in such matters, when they have reason to fear that persons whom they have trusted are playing tricks with them. If Don John was acting loyally, he had nothing to fear. After the edict was sent off, Don John wrote again to Perez that he must resign. Sooner than remain to govern Flanders on such conditions, he would turn hermit. If the king insisted on keeping him there he would become desperate, fling up the reins and go home, though he lost his life for it. He implored that he might not be driven to choose between disobedience and infamy.

Perez showed Philip all these letters; and they were considered in the cabinet. The blame was laid on Escovedo,

who was held to have betrayed his trust. Don John was informed kindly, but peremptorily, that his return at such a time would be prejudicial to the public service. No one could be so fit as the King's brother to recover the loyalty of the Estates. The King said that he understood his feelings, and could sympathise with him; but he must try to be patient; least of all must he rush off into France where the Government had not asked for his assistance. The English project and his other wishes should be considered when the time for them was come; but his present duty was to reconcile Flanders, and there he must remain. Escovedo had spoken of returning himself to speak to the King. Perez told him that if he came back without permission, it would be taken as a serious offence, and was not to be thought of.

Don John acquiesced, or seemed to acquiesce. The Perpetual Edict was ratified. The troops began the evacuation, and on May 2 Don John was received at Brussels, and installed as governor. Had he been sincere, the storm would have blown over; but the next news which arrived about him at Madrid was that he had actually made a private treaty with the Court of Rome. The Pope had promised him 6,000 men and 150,000 ducats for the English expedition, while before the Brussels settlement had lasted a fortnight he was again in correspondence with the Duke of Guise, and was threatening open hostilities against Holland and Zealand, which were making difficulties about liberty of worship. The difficulty need not have been insuperable; and the Estates refused to sanction immediate violence. Don John snatched at the excuse to break with them on his own authority; with such regiments as had not yet gone, he seized Namur; and Escovedo, in spite of his positive orders, rushed home after all, to press Philip to allow the army to return. The war should then

be carried on in earnest. The Spanish forces could live in the rebel provinces as in an enemy's country, and lay them waste with fire and sword.

Information more unwelcome never reached Philip. He longed for peace; he had been acting in good faith; he refused to counter-order the troops; he blamed the seizure of Namur, and abhorred the very mention of fire and sword. Still at the eleventh hour he clung to the hope of reconciliation. The Estates declared Don John a public enemy, and invited the Archduke Matthias to take his place. Even so, Philip persevered. He sent a commission to offer a complete amnesty, with the instant and perpetual removal of the army. The Estates might choose their own governor, either the Archduke Matthias, or the Archduke Ferdinand, or the Prince of Parma. But it was too late; the day for peace was gone. Confidence was irrecoverably lost, and the quarrel had to be fought out to the end. The army went back—there was no help for it—with the Prince of Parma at its head; while it was said and believed that Don John was treating with the Duke of Guise for an open alliance, without regard to their respective sovereigns—a very strange and questionable performance. Both Guise and Philip were no doubt defending the Catholic religion. But respect for forms and secular interests were not to pass for nothing. Spain and France were the rivals for Continental supremacy. They had been at war off and on for three-quarters of a century, and, if the religious question was settled, might at any time be at war again. Philip had not forgotten that it was a Duke of Guise who had defended Metz against his father; and for his brother to take on himself to settle points of international policy with the subject of another sovereign, was something not very far removed from treason.

But we must now return to the scapegoat who was to

31437

bear the blame for all these things, the unlucky Escovedo. Flying home, as we saw him, in the teeth of a positive command, he landed at Santander on July 21. The worst had not yet happened; for it was not till the January following that the commission went with the last overtures for peace, nor was the treating with Guise as yet more than an unpleasant rumour. But Philip was legitimately incensed with Escovedo, and, if we can believe M. Mignet, had prepared a peculiar reception for him; nay, was expecting that Escovedo was coming with murderous intentions against himself. Perez having informed the king in a note of Escovedo's approach, Philip, according to his habit, and in his well-known abominable hand, scrawled on the margin, 'Menester será prevenir nos bien de todo y dar nos mucha priesa á despacharle antes que nos maté.' The verb 'despachar,' like its English correspondent 'despatch,' has two meanings, and 'matar' has two meanings. M. Mignet supposes the words to mean, 'We must be quick and assassinate him before he kills us.' He makes Philip suspect Escovedo of intended treason, and resolve to be beforehand with him. But no one would have thought of so interpreting the passage if Escovedo had not in fact been assassinated at a later period. The natural translation would be, 'We must despatch him quickly (*i.e.* send him about his business) before he worries us to death;' and as Escovedo remained, for some months after his arrival, not only unmolested, but transacting business with the King, I cannot infer, with M. Mignet, that Philip had already formed so sanguinary a purpose against him. Unquestionably, however, no good will was felt towards a man who had responded so ill to the confidence which had been placed in him. If Philip could have conveniently punished him without irritating his brother, he would gladly have read him a sharp lesson, and the irritation was likely to be

increased as the consequences of his misdoings developed themselves. The especial uneasiness was on the side of France. In the autumn (1577), three months after Escovedo's arrival, Philip sent a new ambassador there, Juan de Vargas Mexia, to inquire particularly into what was passing between his brother and the Duke of Guise. Mexia ascertained that the correspondence was real and that secret agents were going to and fro between them, though to what purpose he could not tell. The suspicious feature was the complete silence on the subject both of Don John and his secretary. Escovedo's manners were abrupt and arbitrary. In January Philip received a letter from him, which he described happily as *descosido*, loose, unstitched, visionary. He handed it to Perez, that he might see how 'sanguinary' it was.

Don John, at the reopening of the war, had begun with a success. He had defeated the Prince of Orange at Gemblours. He wrote passionately for reinforcements. The victory had to be followed up, and all would be won. He demanded money—money and Escovedo. Philip, unhappily, had won victories before in the Low Countries, and knew better what to expect from them. His own more temperate policy had been thwarted and ruined, and it was but too natural that he should hold his brother's wild adviser as responsible. If he sent him back, it would be only to throw fuel on the fire. Don John, and the Pope, and the Guises would set all Europe in confusion. Escovedo was no fool. He could not be kept waiting at Madrid with dilatory excuses. To imprison him, or bring him to trial, might drive Don John at once into some dangerous course. It would lead to investigations and the publication of State secrets which ought not to be revealed.

There was a theory much in favour at the Spanish

court, that criminals who had forfeited their lives, or persons whose lives were for any reason inconsistent with public safety, might, when the facts were certain, and when an open prosecution would be inconvenient, be removed privately by orders of the Council of State. So Don Carlos had been disposed of; so the Flemish envoy at Simancas. Spain was not the only country where in extreme cases such proceedings were held permissible. Elizabeth would have been grateful to Sir Amyas Paulet if he would have relieved her of the Queen of Scots. In Italy, in France, in Scotland, a stab with a dagger was an expedient adopted in emergencies, with no great care to ascertain that it was deserved. Spain and England were rather in advance of other nations than behind them; and in Spain, heartily loyal as it was, the public had begun to doubt whether these secret executions ought to be continued.

A zealous court preacher had maintained, in a sermon at which Philip was present, that kings had absolute power over the lives and fortunes of their subjects. The Inquisition, of all courts in the world, took up the question. The preacher was obliged to retract his proposition in the same pulpit, and to confess that kings had no more power over their subjects than divine and human law allowed them. The old view, however, held its ground in spite of the Holy Office, and was professed in its extreme form by no less a person than the King's spiritual adviser, the same Diego de Chaves who was mentioned at the opening of our story. Don Diego's opinion was this: 'So far as I understand the law,' he said, 'a secular prince who for sufficient cause can take his subjects' lives from them by course of law can also do it without course of law when the evidence of the guilt is clear. Form and order are not essentials in such sense that they cannot be dispensed with; and if the prince has sufficient reasons for proceeding irregularly, the vassal who

by his command puts to death another vassal is doing no more than his duty. He is bound to assume the cause to be adequate. The presumption in all cases is that the prince has reason for what he does.'

This doctrine was still held by Philip; and the difficulty with Escovedo was precisely of the kind where the application of it was convenient. Escovedo's guilt might be assumed. He was a confidential minister who had disobeyed his orders, and had caused a great public calamity, involving the renewal of a civil war. If allowed to live, he would still be dangerous. To bring him to an account openly would be dangerous also. Philip directed Antonio Perez to consult the Marques de los Velez. The opinion of the marquis was decided, that Escovedo should be killed; yet that the King must not appear to have directed his execution, lest Don John should be exasperated. Some scheme should be contrived by which it could appear that he had been sacrificed to private revenge. A Government must have been singularly helpless which could have recourse to such expedients. But so it was. For the act itself De los Velez had so little hesitation that, 'with the Sacrament in his mouth,' he was ready to assert the necessity of it. The best method, he thought, would be to give Escovedo 'something to eat' from which he should not recover.

There was nothing in such a proposal to disturb Philip's ignoble conscientiousness. He sincerely believed that by consenting he was discharging a public duty, and with no more personal resentment than if he had been signing a warrant for an ordinary execution. It has never been suggested that Philip had any private malice against Escovedo, or had any motive beyond what was afterwards alleged. Why Antonio Perez should have encouraged him, why he should himself have so readily undertaken a treacherous

office, is another question on which speculation has been busy. He had been Escovedo's personal friend. They had grown up as boys together in the family of Ruy Gomez. They had been transferred together to the King's service. They had never differed politically until Escovedo had become Don John's secretary, and they had corresponded afterwards on terms of the closest intimacy. It is true that Perez had been the strongest advocate for a policy of peace, and Escovedo for war; but an antagonism of opinion scarcely explains the readiness with which one Secretary of State undertook to murder another. And it has been assumed as a matter of course that Perez must have had some private motives of his own.

Before entering into these dark regions I will describe briefly what actually happened. The 'something to eat' was administered as De los Velez recommended. Perez took into his confidence his own master of the household, Diego Martinez: he told him that the King and council considered Escovedo's life to be dangerous to the peace of Europe, and that Escovedo must be secretly made away with. To satisfy Martinez's scruples he showed him a letter in the King's hand. Enriquez, a page, was also admitted into the mystery. An apothecary was found far away in Arragon who could mix a potion, and Escovedo was invited to dinner. Two or three experiments were tried with imperfect success. The unlucky wretch became very ill after swallowing a dish of cream with some white powder in it; but he had not taken enough. He suspected foul play, and afterwards dined alone in his apartments in the palace. A page in the palace kitchen was bribed to put a larger dose into a plate which was sent up to him. Escovedo discovered the poison, and an innocent slave girl who had dressed the dish was strangled in the Plaza at Madrid.

The fate of this poor creature, so piteous because so utterly undeserved, passed as a mere incident; Perez scarcely gave a second thought to it, and the king's conscience could not descend to a kitchen wench. But poison, it was clear, could not be depended on; and steel was a surer method. Escovedo's habits were watched. He was out much after dark, and returned late to his apartments. Bravoes were brought up by the exertions of Diego Martinez from remote parts of the Peninsula. Easter had come, and Perez, to be out of the way, went for the Holy Week to Alcala de Henares. On the night of Easter Monday, March 31, 1578, Don John's secretary was run through the body in a public street, and was killed on the spot.

Madrid was an orderly city, and open assassinations were unusual. A person, himself of so much consequence, and the notorious favourite of a prince who was the idol of the people, could not be found lying dead without a considerable stir being caused by it. The police were out like hornets. The gates were guarded, and no one was allowed to pass. The hotels and lodging-houses were called on for a list of their guests. The assassins were out of reach, for they were secreted in Perez's own house, and no clue could be found; yet suspicion at once and instinctively pointed to Perez as the instigator, and his absence at Alcala was not enough to clear him. His wife, Juana Coello, called to condole with Escovedo's widow. The widow had not forgotten the dinners and the illness which followed, and the detected attempts at poison. She said significantly she feared the blow had been aimed by a friend's hand. Perez hurried back to the capital, pretending to be horrified. He saw Escovedo's son. He told the alcalde of the court that Escovedo had many enemies; there were rumours of a love affair in Flanders; Escovedo, he knew, had lately received a message, bidding him beware of some jealous Fleming.

Perhaps he overacted his part. The alcalde and the alcalde's son, Garcia de Arce, cross-questioned him unpleasantly. The King was out at the Escurial, where, of course, reports reached him from the magistrates; but he was anxious for particulars. On April 3, three days after the murder, Perez wrote to him, and a copy of the letter survives, with Philip's marginal remarks upon it. Perez told him what had passed with the alcalde, and mentioned what he had said about the love affair. Philip noted, 'This was very right.' Garcia de Arce had asked Perez whether there had been a quarrel between him and Escovedo, implying that he had heard something to that effect from Escovedo's wife. Philip observed, 'There will be danger from that woman.' 'The alcalde,' Perez said, 'had discovered that strange things had been going on during the winter in Escovedo's house; mysterious visitors, night expeditions none knew where, and secret boxes of papers, and keys of other people's houses.' Philip, who evidently looked on himself as a careful, well-intentioned prince, who had disposed of a public enemy in a skilful manner, thought more of Escovedo's plots than of awkward consequences from his murder. He remarked that these keys and visits had a bad complexion; the alcalde must look more closely into that matter, and search it to the bottom. Perez was uncomfortable about his bravoes, whom he knew not how to dispose of. He had thought of sending them away with despatches as Government couriers; but it seemed too dangerous. He recommended Philip to put the inquiry into the alcalde's hands exclusively, and to forbid any other person to meddle with it. Philip prudently observed that to interfere with the investigation would provoke suspicion. He would communicate with the alcalde, and would do what he could. The bravoes must be kept for the present where they were, and Perez meanwhile might come out to the Escurial to

see him. Finally, to quiet Perez's evident alarm, he said: 'If Escovedo's widow desires to speak with me, I cannot refuse to see her; but do not fear that you will be unsupported. I am with you, and will not fail you in anything that may be expedient or necessary. Assure yourself of this. You know it well.'

There is no doubt at all that in the last extremity, and if Perez's life was in danger, Philip intended honestly to tell the truth.

Strong, however, as suspicion was, suspicion was not proof; and proof against Perez there was none. He had been many miles from Madrid when the murder was committed. His servants, Diego Martinez and Enriquez, knew that they had been acting by the King's authority. They had everything to gain by keeping counsel, and might be in serious danger if they betrayed their secret. The bravoes slipped away after a week or two, when the vigilance had relaxed. Each of them had a bag of doubloons with a commission as *alferez* (ensign in the army, unattached). They dispersed to Italy, to Central Europe, to all the winds. Every trace was thus swept out which could connect Perez with the murder. The excitement died gradually away, and the affair seemed to be forgotten.

But poisoned wounds will not heal, though they be skinned over. The sore was to break out again, and the story to assume a form which has given it a place among the *causes célèbres* of the world.

Brilliant writers of history are subject to one general temptation—they desire to give their narrative dramatic completeness. The drama, if it is to have flavour, must revolve upon personal motives, and history must follow on the same lines. Sovereigns and statesmen who have been charged with the fortunes of nations, are assumed, where their actions require explanation, to have been

influenced by no other passions than those which govern private individuals in their own more limited spheres When a woman's name appears as connected with such high persons, the connection is always assumed to have been of one peculiar kind. To ask for evidence or look for other explanations is taken as a sign of simplicity or of ignorance of human nature.

The legend now stereotyped in European tradition is that the wife of Ruy Gomez, the Princess of Eboli, was the mistress of Philip the Second, and that the Princess of Eboli preferred Antonio Perez to the King. Escovedo, it is said, discovered the intrigue and threatened to reveal it. Perez, in consequence, calumniated Escovedo to Philip. Philip allowed him to be murdered, but discovered afterwards that he had been the dupe of a treacherous minister and a bad woman, and regarded Perez thenceforward with implacable hatred.

Now, before going further, I have to observe that the eleven years during which Philip is assumed to have been occupied with these emotions and the effort to give effect to them, were the busiest in the whole of his long, laborious reign. They were the years in which he annexed Portugal. They were the years of Parma's administration of the Netherlands. They were the years of preparation for the Armada. There was the civil war in France to be watched and guided. There were Naples and Sicily to be ruled, and the Turks to be held in check in the Mediterranean. There were the ambassadors' despatches from foreign courts. There was a close, constant, and elaborate correspondence to be maintained with the Pope. There were the reports of the Inquisition to be received and studied. There were English, Scotch, and Irish Catholic conspiracies to be kept in hand. There was the great new empire across the Atlantic, and Drake and Hawkins, and the English

corsairs. There were the various Councils of State for the internal administration at home, and in every one of these departments Philip not only interfered but exercised the most unrelaxing supervision. Whether he did his work well or ill is not to the purpose; mind and body were incessantly engaged upon it. Minutes of council, tens of thousands of ciphered despatches with rough drafts of as many ciphered answers to them, survive to witness to the industry of a sovereign who permitted nothing to be done without his knowledge in all his enormous dominions. There is scarcely one of these documents which is not annotated in his hand, and often elaborately; and students who, like myself, have toiled through these mountains of papers, have cursed the writing, the worst perhaps that ever was seen, but have had to confess, when the meaning was arrived at, that the meaning was a real and often a wise one. The poor King did patiently endeavour to understand the subjects before him, and to resolve upon them with the best efforts of his limited ability; while if the working hours of every day had been doubled, and thus doubled had been devoted all to duty, they would still seem insufficient for the business which he demonstrably got through.

That a mind so occupied should have had leisure to trouble itself with 'jealousies' and 'mistresses,' or indeed to give more than a passing thought to the Escovedo affair at all after the public dangers from him had ceased, is to me not easily conceivable, for the simple reason that there was no time for it. The King was occupied all but exclusively with other matters. The murder was an angry spot which would not heal; he had fallen into a scrape, and his behaviour was singular; but it can be more easily explained by clumsy efforts to extricate himself than by a romance of which nine-tenths is conjecture, and the tenth remaining inconsistent with admitted facts.

It is, however, true that the Princess of Eboli was soon supposed to have been connected in some way with Escovedo's assassination. The widow of Escovedo knew that high words had passed between her husband and Antonio Perez in which the name of the princess had been mentioned. Perez had been more successful in life than his companion officials, and had borne himself in his prosperity with less moderation than prudence would have recommended. One of these, a priest named Matteo Vasquez, and himself one of Philip's secretaries, disliked Perez, and was also employed in some law suit against the princess. He sought out Escovedo's family and learnt what they had to tell. He was busy all the summer and the winter following pushing his inquiries, and thought at last that he had made a notable discovery. In December, nine months after the murder, he wrote and circulated an anonymous *pasquil*, full of scandalous reflections on Perez and the lady, while simultaneously Escovedo's widow and her son directly charged Perez with the crime, adding that it had been committed to gratify the Princess of Eboli. Perez carried the *pasquil* to Philip—a daring act on his part, if he knew himself to be the King's successful rival. Philip again assured him, both by word and writing, that he need not be uneasy, that no harm should befall him; but Perez knew his master well; he knew his unwillingness that his own share in the matter should be made public, and he observed that Philip seemed not displeased that Vasquez and the Escovedos should be running on a false scent.

It is time, therefore, to say a few words about this famous lady; to tell who she was, and how she came to be concerned in a matter which appeared to be wholly political.

Doña Aña, widow of Ruy Gomez, Prince of Eboli, was the only child of Don Diego Hurtado, chief of the great house of Mendoza. There were many Mendozas in the

Spanish peerage. Don Diego's was the eldest branch. On her father's death a part, but not all, of the inheritance descended to the daughter. She was Princess of Eboli as her husband's widow. Her eldest son, a youth of twenty or thereabouts, was Duke of Pastraña and Prince of Melito. She had five younger children. One of them, a daughter, was married to Alonzo the Good, Duke of Medina Sidonia, known to history as the admiral of the Armada. Family disputes seem to have arisen about Don Diego's succession. Some suit was pending between her and other members of the family. The Princess was detaining money, jewels, and other possessions, to which her relatives laid claim; and the quarrel was further complicated by the political leanings of the young Prince of Melito, who had deserted the old party of his father, Ruy Gomez, and had gone over to the Duke of Alva.

The Princess herself was now thirty-eight years old. She had lost one eye, and was otherwise not beautiful; but she was energetic, imperious, with considerable talents, and able, if she pleased, to be fascinating. That she had been Philip's mistress was an Italian scandal; nothing had then been heard of it in Spain; but Perez gave mysterious hints that the King would have been more intimate with her if she had encouraged him. Any way, she had lost Philip's favour. Visitors at the Eboli palace were frowned upon at the Escurial; the world said that the King was irritated at the rejection of his advances,[1] and that 'wishes unsatisfied were more exasperating than a thousand offences.'

This was perhaps but court gossip; but, whether fact or legend, it is certain on the other hand that the relations

[1] 'Por vivir el Rey offendido de la antigua y continua duracion de la entereza de la Princesa de Eboly haciendole menosprecio.'—*Relacion de Antonio Perez.*

between the Princess and Antonio Perez were intimate and even affectionate. He had been her husband's adopted son. The Princess professed to believe that Ruy Gomez was his real father, and to her Perez's devotion was unconcealed and unbounded. He describes in an enigmatic letter the position in which he stood towards her. M. Mignet says that there can be no doubt of his meaning, and rushes to a preconceived conclusion. The letter is intentionally obscure; the press is uncorrected; and the text in parts is hopeless. But he alludes to the suggestion that he was the Princess's lover only to fling it from him with disgust. His love was for his own wife, whose attachment to him is the finest feature in the whole of this distracted story. The Princess of Eboli he worshipped as a being beyond his sphere. He spoke of her as 'a jewel enamelled in the rarest graces of nature and fortune.' To her husband he owed all that he had become, and he repaid his debt by helping his widow in her difficulties. He made her large advances of money, he collected her rents from Italy; she in turn made him handsome presents; but that either with the King or with Perez the Princess had any personal intrigue is a romantic imagination like the legend of Don Carlos and his stepmother.[1]

It was but natural, under the circumstances, that the Mendoza family should bear no love to Perez, because in the feuds which had arisen he was taking the Princess's

[1] There is no evidence for it except what is supposed to lie in the letter of Antonio Perez 'à un Gran Personage,' which formed part of his public defence. What that letter means it is impossible to say, or even what it was intended to suggest. Perez says that the King disapproved of the intimacy between himself and the Princess, and that there was a mystery connected with this. But a mystery was not necessarily a love affair, nor does it follow that there was a mystery because such a person as Perez wished to make himself interesting by hinting at one.

side. The Prince of Melito had threatened to run him through the body. The Marques de Fabara and the Conde de Cifuentes called one day on the Princess, and were kept waiting because she was closeted with the Secretary. Both of them thought that such a fellow was not fit to live. Escovedo, it came out, had taken the opposite side to Perez. He, too, had been brought up by Ruy Gomez, and claimed a right to interfere in defence of his old master's honour. He had disapproved of the acquaintance; he had said that it must and should be put an end to; and he had spoken to the Princess with so rude a tongue, that she called him a foul-mouthed villain.

A quarrel of this kind explains the ease with which Perez consented to kill Escovedo. We know no actual good of Perez, and there would have been nothing surprising if, out of revenge, he really had misled the King into thinking Escovedo more guilty than he was. But the attempt to prove it broke down; Philip had been influenced by Don John's and Escovedo's own despatches, which had been deciphered by another hand; and never to the last felt certain that his Secretary had in this matter deceived him. Some personal resentment there was, and the Princess was in some way the occasion of it, but in fact Philip's conduct requires no secret passion to make it intelligible. He did not doubt, at least at first, that he had done right, but he was unwilling to admit the truth. He had to maintain his respectability, and, therefore, would not try to prevent the Escovedos and their friends from prosecuting their complaints, while he was not ill-pleased that their suspicions should run wide of himself, and fasten in a quarter where he knew that there was nothing to be discovered. It was just the course which small, commonplace cunning would naturally pursue. The Marques de los Velez could not understand it; he did not

like the look of things, and applied for the governorship of Peru: Perez offered to retire from the public service and satisfy his enemies thus: but the King refused to accept Perez's resignation; he said that he could not spare him; he reiterated, on the word of a gentleman, 'that he would never forsake him, and that Perez knew his word could be depended on.'

More and more loudly Matteo Vasquez and the Escovedos demanded a trial. The King could not directly refuse. Perez himself advised acquiescence; the actual assassins, he said, were beyond reach of discovery; there was no evidence; he was ready to face the prosecution; the name of the Princess need not be mentioned. Philip, however, had a conscience above perjury; he was not ashamed to admit what he had done, if it was known only to discreet persons who could be safely trusted. The case was to be heard before the High Court of Castile. The King sent for Don Antonio de Pazos, who was then president, told him everything, and asked his advice. The President thought that the prosecution must be silenced; he informed young Escovedo that if he insisted on justice he should have it, but he was accusing persons of high rank in the State; his charge, if he failed to make it good, would recoil on himself; and he assured him on the word of a priest that Perez and the Princess were as innocent as himself. With Matteo Vasquez the President was more peremptory. Vasquez, he said, was no relation of Escovedo's; his interference, especially as he was a priest, was gratuitous and unbecoming; on the facts he was mistaken altogether. The Escovedos yielded and promised to go no further; Vasquez was obstinate, and persisted. Public curiosity had been excited; it was felt instinctively that the King was in the secret, and there was now a widespread desire to know what that secret was. Vasquez hated Perez

and the Princess also, and made himself the representative of the popular anxiety.

Philip had been contented that opinion should run in a false direction; and he had hoped to prevent too close an inquiry by his confidence with the President. He had failed, and he had seemed to wish in consequence to silence Vasquez, and, if possible, to reconcile him with the Princess whom he had calumniated. But now the difficulty was on her side. She, the greatest lady in Spain after the Queen, had been insulted and slandered; it was not for her to leave a cloud upon her name by stooping to take the hand of her accuser. The Cardinal Archbishop of Toledo was sent to reason with her, but the Archbishop was too much of her own opinion to make an impression on her indignation. She had already a long catalogue of grievances, and this last insult was too much. She wrote Philip a letter which he showed to Perez, and Perez preserved it.

Señor,—Your Majesty has commanded the Cardinal of Toledo to speak with me in the matter of Antonio Perez. Matteo Vasquez and his friends have said openly that all who enter my house lose your favour. They have stated also that Antonio Perez killed Escovedo on my account; that he was under so many obligations to my family, that he would do whatever I asked him. They have published abroad these speeches; and I require your Majesty, as a king and a gentleman, to take such notice of this conduct as the world shall hear of. If your Majesty declines, if the honour of my house is to be sacrificed, as our property has been sacrificed, if this is to be the reward of the long and faithful services of my ancestors, be it so. I have discharged my conscience; self-respect forbids me to say more.

I write to your Majesty in resentment at the offences which I have received, and I write in confidence, supposing myself to be addressing a gentleman.

The president presses me about a letter, which I wrote to

your Majesty, touching bribes taken by—— (word omitted). I am charged with having said something of the Duke of——. My character suffers from these tokens of your Majesty's goodwill. Though justice is on my side, my suit is before a tainted tribunal; I shall lose it and be put out of possession. When I ask the president why he acts thus towards me, he says that your Majesty will have it so. Melchior de Herrera (?) allows that I am right; but he swears me to this and that, and pretends that it is your pleasure. You have sent him a memorial from Don Inigo.[1] Why am I to be twice memorialised? It is important to me to withdraw the security under which I and my children are bound for Don Inigo. He has broken his obligations, and may leave Valladolid. Antonio de Padilla confesses that it is so; but your Majesty forbids him to interfere. If this is true, I may as well abandon my suit, and my children too. This is the natural conclusion from the position which you assume towards me. When I reflect what my husband's merits were, such treatment would make me lose my senses did I not need them all to guard myself from this Moorish cur (Matteo Vasquez) whom your Majesty keeps in your service. I demand that neither I nor any of mine may be placed in that man's power.

I have given this letter, though it strays far beyond our immediate subject, because it shows how imperfectly the circumstances are known to us which surround the story; and how idle it is for us to indulge imagination beyond what is written. Long avenues of questions lie open before us, which must remain for ever unanswered, yet in the answer to which alone can lie a complete explanation of the relations between the Princess of Eboli and the King of Spain.

Submit to be reconciled with the 'Moorish cur' it was plain she would not. He had circulated slanders against her in the court, and she insisted that he should withdraw them.[2] Perez was obstinate, too, for his honour was

[1] Inigo de Mendoza, Marquis of Almenara.

[2] This article had been written, and was partly in type, before I had seen the interesting work, lately published, on the Princess of Eboli, by Don Gaspar Moro. Although the documents discovered by Don Gaspar have

touched. The Archbishop of Toledo and the King's special preacher, Fray Hernando de Castillo, stood by them, and

added largely to our knowledge of the secret history of the Princess, I have found it unnecessary to withdraw or alter any opinion which I had formed. I have had the pleasure of finding my own conjectures for the most part confirmed and converted into certainties by evidence not open to dispute. Don Gaspar has disproved conclusively the imagined *liaison* between the Princess and Philip the Second. He continues to believe that improper relations existed between her and Antonio Perez; but as he alleges nothing fresh in proof of it beyond what was already known, I look on this as no more than part of the old legend which has continued to adhere to Don Gaspar with no more authority for it than tradition. The passionate love which existed between Perez and his own wife is inconsistent with a belief, at least on her part, that any such relation had been formed. Be this as i may, however, Don Gaspar has proved that the jealousy of which Perez speaks, as having governed Philip's conduct, was no jealousy of the preference of Perez to himself by the Princess, but a jealousy of the influence of a woman, with whom he was on the worst possible terms, over his own secretary. Don Gaspar has found and printed more than a hundred letters of Matteo Vasquez, whose connection with the Escovedo prosecution was so close, and had hitherto been so unintelligible. The Crown was in some way interested in the great law suits which the Princess was carrying on. In all that related to her Matteo Vasquez was as deep in Philip's confidence as Antonio Perez in the wider world of politics. His relations with each of them were carefully concealed from the other. Perez might know that Matteo Vasquez was employed by his master against the Princess; but Matteo Vasquez never guessed that his master had ordered Perez to assassinate Escovedo: and thus Philip himself, by his passion for secrecy, and for what he regarded as skilful management, had entangled his two secretaries in a furious antagonism. Perez had no knowledge how far Philip had engaged himself in the Eboli litigation. To him Matteo Vasquez appeared to have thrown himself gratuitously into the quarrel. The King was irritated at Perez for unconsciously thwarting him by taking up the Princess's cause. Matteo, who, evidently from his letters, hated the Princess, had almost succeeded in dragging into light his master's complicity with Escovedo's murder, by his innocent belief that Perez and the Princess were the guilty parties, and that the cause of the murder was resentment at the part which Escovedo had taken in attempting to separate the Princess from Perez. Not a hint, not a suggestion of any love-scandal appears in the whole of the correspondence. Some great question was at issue, the very nature of which cannot now be accurately made out, on which the court was divided, and which was enveloped in a network of intrigue—the King sitting in the middle of it, playing the part of Providence with the best intentions, with extremely limited ability, and with the most unfortunate results—for he affected especially to imitate Providence in the secrecy of its methods; and secrecy is only safe to a judgment which cannot err.

the quarrel had gone into a new form. Philip's position was a ridiculous one. If Vasquez persisted in prosecuting Perez before a judge who was acquainted with the truth, it was scarcely possible that the truth would be unrevealed. Secretary Vasquez is a dark figure. The letter of the Princess shows that Philip was secretly employing this man in various matters in which she supposed herself to be wronged, and there were reasons for his conduct at which, with our imperfect knowledge, it is idle to guess. Consulting no one but his confessor, the King gave orders for the arrest both of Perez and of the Princess also, and on July 29, 1579, they were ordered into separate confinement. The lady's relations, it is likely, required no explanations, but for form's sake Philip offered them. The same night he wrote to the Duke of Infantado and to Medina Sidonia. A dispute had arisen, he said, between his two secretaries, Antonio Perez and Matteo Vasquez, with which the Princess was concerned. She had complained to him unreasonably, and his confessor had vainly endeavoured to persuade her to be reconciled to Vasquez. She had been committed, therefore, to the fortress of Pinto, and he had thought it right to give them immediate information. The resentment of the Duke of Infantado was not likely to be deep; Medina Sidonia replied coolly that so wise a sovereign had doubtless good reason for his actions. He was himself laid up with gout, and the pain was in his mind as well as in his body. He trusted that his Majesty would be gracious to the Princess, and that the grace would be even more marked than the punishment.

The Archbishop of Toledo called the next morning on Juana de Coello, Perez's wife. He told her from the King that she was not to be alarmed. Her husband's life was in no danger, nor his honour either. The imprisonment was a mere matter of precaution to prevent other mischiefs.

The Princess now drops out of the scene. Philip informed her that if she would undertake to hold no more communication with Perez, she would be received to favour, and might return to the court. She replied that if Perez ever wrote to her or sent her a message, the King should know of it. But this was not sufficient. After a brief confinement she was allowed to retire to her castle at Pastraña, and there without further disturbance she remained to the end of her life.

Meanwhile, if Philip's object had been to stop the prosecution for Escovedo's murder, and to divert suspicion from himself, both purposes had been attained. Matteo Vasquez must have been satisfied, for his name was never mentioned again. Popular opinion had accused Perez of having committed the murder at the Princess's instigation. Their simultaneous arrest led to a general belief that the suspicion was not unfounded. If the King had made a second confidant of Vasquez, and had concerted the details of the comedy with him, the result, at least for a time, did credit to his ingenuity. Perez's fault, whatever it had been, was not to appear unpardonable. He was left four months in charge of the alcalde of the court. He was treated with kindness, and even distinction, and was permitted to have his children with him. In the November following he became unwell, and was permitted further to return to his own house, though still as a prisoner. Next he was required to sign a bond of *plegtohomenage*, by which he and Matteo Vasquez engaged as king's vassals not to injure each other. The guard was then removed. He recovered his freedom and resumed his duties as secretary to the Council of State, though no longer as confidential secretary to the King. The whole matter seemed to have been thus wound up, and public interest was soon directed on worthier objects. The death of Don Sebastian in Africa had left

vacant the Portuguese throne. Philip took possession of the succession as the nearest heir. The Duke of Alva with a few skilful movements disposed of the pretender. Philip went to Lisbon to be installed as sovereign, and in the glory of this grand achievement Escovedo's assassination might have gone the way of other scandals.

But, as Perez said, 'it was a thing which had no beginning and could have no end.' A cloud still hung over him, and his slightest movements were watched. The Princess of Eboli sent him presents from Pastraña. It was immediately reported to Philip. He had many friends, the Archbishop of Toledo, and 'grandees' of highest rank. They came often to see him, but he was forbidden to return their visits. Philip evidently chose that a sinister suspicion should still remain attached to him. Antonio de Pazos, the President of Castile, knew the whole story, for the King had told him. Juana de Coello complained to him of her husband's treatment, and insisted that his reputation ought to be cleared. The President was of the same opinion, and so informed the King. 'If Antonio Perez has committed a crime,' he said, 'give him a formal trial and hang him. If he is innocent, let him go on his good behaviour, and if he offends again, punish him.'

The King answered: 'If the matter were of a kind which would allow a judicial process, it should have been ordered from the first day. You must tell the woman to be quiet; no change is possible at present.'

'Time,' Philip used to say, 'cures all evils.' 'Time and I never fail.' And so he went on trusting to time when time could not help him.

Perez had friends, but he had enemies also. Matteo Vasquez had withdrawn, but others had taken his place, and Philip's ambiguities encouraged them. Among these were the powerful Mendozas. Perez had managed the

Princess's money affairs. He had jewels in his charge and other things also which they conceived to belong to them. His habits were luxurious, and remained so in spite of his semi-disgrace. His palace, his plate, his furniture, his equipments, and entertainments were the most splendid in Madrid. He gambled also; perhaps he won, perhaps he lost; in either case it was a reproach. How, men asked, could Antonio Perez support such a vast expenditure? and the answer suggested was, of course, corruption or malversation. He had six thousand ducats a year from his offices; but the Archbishop of Seville, a friendly witness, said that he must be spending fifteen or twenty thousand. The King was advised to order an inquiry into the accounts of all the public offices, and of Perez's, of course, among them. A 'lion's mouth,' like that at Venice, was opened for secret information, and was not long in want of sustenance. Accusations poured in as venomous as hatred could distil. Rodrigo Vasquez de Arce,[1] who afterwards became President of the High Court, conducted the investigation of them, and the result was not favourable to Perez. Undoubtedly he had received sums of money from all parts of the empire to expedite business, just as Bacon did in England, and as high officials everywhere were then in the habit of doing. They looked on such things as recognised perquisites so long as nothing was said about them; but gratuities were formally prohibited, and, when exposed, were incapable of defence.

On the Report being presented, Philip allowed Perez to be prosecuted for corrupt practices, and it was then that, at a venture, he was accused further of having altered ciphered despatches.

No one knew better than Philip that, under the arrangements of his cabinet, the alteration of despatches without

[1] It does not appear whether he was a relation of Matteo Vasquez.

his own knowledge was impossible. Perez wrote to Philip to remonstrate. 'He could not answer such a charge,' he said, 'without producing his papers,' and among them the King's own notes upon Escovedo's death. The confessor was sent to see these papers, and, having read them, could only recommend his master to let the charge fall. As to corrupt practices, he advised Perez to make no defence, and assured him that he should not be condemned in the value of a pair of gloves. The sentence went beyond the pair of gloves. Perez was suspended from his office for ten years. He was to suffer two years' imprisonment, and was to pay besides thirty thousand ducats, half to the Crown, and half to the family of the Princess of Eboli, as property belonging to them which he had unlawfully appropriated.

This judgment was delivered on January 23, 1585. It was not published; nor is it certain how much of it was enforced. But there were reasons why, at that moment, the sentence of imprisonment was convenient. The Escovedo business was bursting up again. Enriquez, the page, who had assisted at the murder, had let fall incautious speeches. The president, Rodrigo Vasquez, took the subject into the scope of his inquiries. He sent for Enriquez and examined him. On his evidence Diego Martinez was arrested also. If these two could be induced to tell the truth, the proofs against Perez would be complete. He might produce his papers, but in a close court the judges might refuse to receive or look at them to save the King's credit; and Perez would certainly be executed. The King was just then going down to Aragon for the opening of the Cortes. In Aragon trials were public, with equal justice between king and subject. Perez, himself an Aragonese, if left free might follow the King thither, and put himself under the protection of the laws of the Pro-

vince. There certainly, if not in Madrid, his exculpation would be heard. It was therefore determined that he should be at once arrested, and a guard was sent to his house to take him.

Perez from first to last had an honest friend at the court, Cardinal Quiroga, Archbishop of Toledo. The Archbishop saw, or feared, that Perez was about to be sacrificed, and his sense of equity, though he was Grand Inquisitor, was outraged. He recommended Perez to take sanctuary. He would then be a prisoner of the Church, and his case would be heard in the Holy Office. The Inquisition had already denounced Philip's method of removing doubtful subjects. It would stand by Perez now and prevent a scandalous crime.

Perez took the Cardinal's advice and fled to the nearest church. But the Crown officials were determined to have him, and the sanctuary was not respected. The church door was burst in; he was torn out of his hiding-place and carried off again to a State prison. His property was sequestrated, his papers were seized, and the Nuncio, when he protested, was threatened with dismissal. Henry the Eighth himself could not have been more peremptory in his contempt of sacred privileges than the ministers of the Most Catholic King. The documents were at once examined. The secret correspondence was found to have been abstracted. Juana de Coello was supposed to have it; and, to extort it from her, she and her children were carried off also, and confined in the same castle with her husband. It was true that she had some part of the private papers, and threats of torture could not wring them from her till she had ascertained that those of most special consequence were not among them. She found someone who would take a note to her husband. Being without ink she wrote it with her blood. The answer came back that she might

deliver the papers without fear, the Escovedo notes being secured elsewhere. She mentioned where the boxes would be found. The King's confessor himself came to her to receive the keys. He, too, had some sense remaining of right and wrong, and he told her that if Perez was troubled any further, he would himself go 'como un loco,' like a madman, into the Plaza, and proclaim the truth to all the world.

The boxes being surrendered, Juana de Coello and the children were sent home, there being no longer occasion for keeping them. As the confessor was going off, she could not help telling him that there were still a few papers reserved. The King, when he came to look, must have discovered that this was fatally true. All else was in its place, even to the most secret ciphered correspondence; but the fifty or sixty especial letters, which he knew himself to have written, about Escovedo, and knew also that Perez had preserved—these were not to be discovered. That, if he had got possession of these letters, Philip would have allowed Perez to be tried and executed, is not certain; but it may have been well for him that he was not exposed to the temptation. As matters stood, the judges might refuse to admit the letters, and might pass sentence on the evidence. But Juana de Coello could carry the damning records into Aragon, or across the frontier, and publish them; and all Europe would cry out 'Shame!' Nor was the Church idle. The Church authorities, with the Pope behind them, demanded that Perez should be restored to sanctuary. Worried, impatient, cursing the day that he had ever blundered into so detestable a quagmire, the King again paused. Once more the prison doors were opened; once more Perez was brought back to Madrid, and lodged in a handsome house with his family. Evidently the unfortunate King was at his wits' end, and could not deter-

mine what course to choose. Perez went to church for mass. The great people came as before to show him countenance. He himself addressed many letters to the King, which were carefully read, if not answered. The Archbishop of Toledo, in particular, was confident that all would be well. The attitude of the Church alone, he said, would suffice to protect Perez. The President Rodrigo would have gone on gladly with the trial, but obstacles were continually arising. Someone asked him what was to be done. 'How can I tell you?' he replied. 'One day the King says go on, the next he says hold back. There is a mystery which I cannot make out.'

Fourteen months thus drifted away. At the end of them the King could hold out no longer. There was still but a single witness, for Diego Martinez had so far continued staunch. He might confess, perhaps if he was tortured, but torture could not be used without the King's permission. Philip wrote to Perez telling him generally that he might rely on his protection, but without saying what steps he was prepared to take. Perez was brought to trial at last before President Rodrigo. He stood upon his innocence, denied that he had murdered Escovedo, and denied all knowledge of the matter. Enriquez gave his evidence with correctness; but Diego Martinez, who was confronted with him, said he was a liar, and his story a fabrication. Conviction on such terms was not to be had. Perez's papers were handed to President Rodrigo to be examined. He searched them through, but found nothing to the purpose. Perez, after all, would probably have been acquitted, but for the intervention of a 'Deus ex machinâ,' Philip himself, who interposed in a manner the most unlooked for. This is the most extraordinary feature in the whole extraordinary story. Philip, it might have been thought, would have welcomed Perez's acquittal as the

happiest escape from his embarrassments; but it seems that his conscience was really disturbed at the success of deliberate perjury. Just as it became clear that the prosecution had failed, and that Perez, whether guilty or not, could not be pronounced guilty without a violation of the laws, Philip's confessor, as if from himself, but of course with his master's sanction, wrote to him to say that although he had killed Escovedo, he had a complete defence for it. When the truth was known, his character would be cleared; he advised him, therefore, to make a complete confession, and at once say that he had acted by the King's order.

This was written on September 3, the year after the defeat of the Armada. Through all that famous enterprise, from its first conception to the final catastrophe, this mean business had simmered on, and was at last at boiling point.

Well as Perez knew his master, he was not prepared for this last move. What could it mean? The King had promised to stand by him. But if he confessed, his guilt would be clear. He might say what he pleased, but the judges might hang him notwithstanding. There was Diego Martinez, too, to be thought of. He would be hanged, at any rate. So long as the proof was deficient, confession would be insanity. The King, besides, had positively ordered that the motives for the murder were not to be introduced.

In this tone he replied to Diego de Chaves; but the confessor stood to his opinion. Evidently he had consulted Philip again.

'The plain course for you,' he answered, 'is to say directly that you had the King's orders for Escovedo's death. You need not enter on the reasons. You ought not to make a false oath in a court of justice; and if you have done so already you ought not to persevere in it. Where there has been no fault there can be no punishment,

and confession will only show the innocence of yourself and your accomplice. When the truth is out, the wound will heal, and his Majesty will have given the Escovedo family the justice which they demand. If they persist after this, they can be silenced or banished. Only, once more, the causes which led the King to act as he did are not to be mentioned.'

M. Mignet considers that these letters were written to tempt Perez to a confession, in order that he might be destroyed. The judges would ask for proof, and, having lost his papers, he would be unable to produce it. The answer is simple. Both Philip and the confessor were aware that the compromising letters were still in possession of either Perez or his wife. Perez, who was not troubled about perjury, thought it safer to risk an uncertainty than to act as the confessor advised. To confess was to place his life in the judges' hands. He could feel no certainty that the King's orders would be held a sufficient authority. Philip's conduct had been strange from the beginning, and kings' consciences are not like the consciences of private individuals. They may profess to wish one thing, while their duty as sovereigns requires another. There was another alternative; the Escovedos, who were now the only prosecutors, might agree to a compromise. Perez proposed it to the confessor; the confessor permitted Perez to try, if the King was not to be a party to the transaction: overtures were made, and were successful. The Escovedo family consented to withdraw their suit on receiving twenty thousand ducats.

This seemed like the end; and if there had been nothing more in Escovedo's death than an ordinary murder, the compensation would have been held sufficient, and the end would have really come. But behind the private wrong there was a great question at issue, whether

the sovereign had or had not a right to make away with his subjects when he believed them criminal, because for reasons of State it was inexpedient to bring them to trial. Though Castile had no longer constitutional rights like Aragon, a high-minded people (as the Castilians were) had a regard for their own security. The doctrine had been condemned by the Holy Office, and the judges can have liked it as little.

The opportunity of bringing the matter to a point was not to be lost. The President Rodrigo wrote to Philip that his reputation was at stake. The prosecution had been dropped, but the world was convinced, notwithstanding, that the murder had been committed by his order. It concerned his honour that Perez should explain why that order had been given. He begged the King to send him an instruction in the following terms: 'Tell Antonio Perez, in my name, that, as he knows the causes for which I commanded him to kill Escovedo, I desire him to declare what those causes were.'

M. Mignet adheres to his opinion that Perez was to be betrayed; that, being without his papers, he must fail to prove what he was required to reveal, and could then be executed as a slanderer and an assassin. It would be difficult for him and perhaps impossible to recall satisfactorily a condition of things which was now buried under the incidents of twelve eventful years. But there is no occasion to suspect Philip of such deliberate treachery. The stages through which his mind had passed can easily be traced. He never doubted the righteousness of Escovedo's execution; but he had been afraid to irritate his brother, and had therefore wished his own part in it to be concealed. Therefore, when Perez was first suspected, he had not come forward to protect him; and therefore also he had connived at the direction of the suspicion on

the Princess of Eboli. A long time had passed away, Don John was gone, the aspect of Europe had changed. He had no longer the same reluctance to admit that he had ordered the murder; but he had bidden Perez be silent about the causes, because, though sufficient for his own conscience, it would be hard, when circumstances were so much altered, to make them intelligible to others. The Spaniards of 1590, smarting under the destruction of the Armada, might well have thought if Don John and the Duke of Guise had tried the 'enterprise' together, when the Queen of Scots was alive, so many of their homes would not then have been desolate.

But public opinion was excited. The compromise of the prosecution seemed to imply that there was something disgraceful behind. A secret half revealed is generally more dangerous than the truth; and thus, when called on by the judges to direct Perez to make a full confession, the King felt that it was better to consent.

This explanation seems sufficient, without looking for sinister motives. The order was written, and Perez was required to obey.

It might have been thought that he would have seen in such an order the easiest escape from his troubles. To speak was to be acquitted (at least morally) of a worse crime than of having been a too faithful servant. But it is likely that he did feel it would be difficult for him to make out a satisfactory case. He could produce the King's instructions, and could describe the motive in general terms. But State reasons for irregular actions are always looked askance at, and loyal subjects are inclined to excuse their sovereigns at the expense of their advisers. Perez might naturally fear that he would be accused of having misled the King, perhaps through malice. This view was taken of the case by the Archbishop of Toledo. 'Señor,'

he said to the confessor when he heard of this fresh command, 'either I am mad or this whole affair is mad. If the King bade Perez kill Escovedo, why does he ask for the causes? The King knew them at the time. Perez was not Escovedo's judge. He placed before the King certain despatches. The King directed a course to be taken upon them, and Perez obeyed. Now after twelve years, without his papers, with so many persons gone who could have given evidence, he is asked for explanations. Give him back his papers, bring back five hundred persons now dead out of their graves; and even then he will not be able to do it.'

The Archbishop protested, the Nuncio protested. Juana de Coello and Perez's children wept and clamoured; but President Rodrigo, with the King's orders in his hand, persisted that Perez should speak. Three times successively, in the course of a month, he was brought into court, and he remained stubborn. He says that he would not confess, because the King had personally ordered him to be silent, and that a written form could not supersede an immediate direction, without a private intimation that it was to be obeyed. This is evidently an insufficient explanation. He must have felt that if he detailed the causes for the murder he admitted the fact; and that if he admitted the fact he might be sacrificed.

But the King was determined that the whole truth should be told at last, and that, as he could not tell it himself, it should be told by Perez. After a month's resistance, the question was applied in earnest. Perez was tortured. He broke down under the pain, and told all. It was then that Doña Juana appealed to God against Diego de Chaves in the Dominican chapel. It was then that Doña Gregoria dared President Rodrigo in his hall. What the King or the judges had intended to do next, is mere conjecture. Diego Martinez, when his master had spoken, confessed also.

He was not punished, and Perez perhaps would not have been punished either. The judges might have been contented with the exposure. But Perez did not care to tempt fortune or Philip's humours further. His wife was allowed to visit him in prison. He escaped disguised in her clothes. Horses were waiting, he rode for his life to Aragon, and the next day was safe beyond the frontier.

So ends the first part of the tragi-comedy. The next opened on another stage and with wider issues.

The Fueros or 'Liberties' of Aragon were the only surviving remnant of the free institutions of the Peninsula. At the beginning of the sixteenth century, the two Castiles, Valencia, Granada, and Aragon had their separate administrations and their separate legislatures. The great cities had their municipal corporations, while Portugal till within ten years had been an independent kingdom. One by one they had been absorbed. Aragon remained still free, but with a freedom which had been found inconvenient at Madrid, and was unvalued by the most powerful of the Aragonese nobles themselves. The tendency of the age was towards centralisation, and the tenure of the Fueros had been growing yearly more precarious. Isabella had been impatient for a revolt which would give her an excuse for extinguishing them. The Duke of Alva more lately, on some provocation, said that with three or four thousand of his old soldiers he would make the King's authority supreme. Such as it was, however, the Constitution still subsisted, being supported chiefly by the populace of the towns, who, as long as noise and clamour were sufficient, were the enthusiastic champions of their national privileges. A council for the administration of the province sat at Madrid, but its powers were limited to advice. The Cortes met annually at Saragossa to vote the taxes, but the King could neither prorogue nor dissolve them without their own consent. A

Committee of the Cortes carried on the government, and in the intervals of the sessions remained in office. The Aragonese had their own laws, their own judges, their own police, their own prisons: and no 'alien' armed force was permitted within their boundaries. The Grand Justiciary, the highest executive officer, was nominated by the King, but could not be deprived by him. A Royal Commissioner resided in Saragossa, to observe and to report, to act in cases to which the Crown was a party, perhaps irregularly to distribute favours and influence opinion. But this was the limit of his interference. The Commissioner in the year 1590 was Inigo de Mendoza, Marquis of Almenara, the cousin and the chief antagonist of the Princess of Eboli.

Such was Aragon when Antonio Perez sought an asylum in the land of his fathers. He professed to have been tortured till his limbs were disabled, but he was able to ride without resting till he had crossed the frontier and had reached Calatayud. He made no effort, perhaps he was too weak, to go further, and he took refuge in a Dominican convent. Within ten hours of his arrival an express came in from Madrid to a private gentleman, Don Manuel Zapata, with orders to take him, dead or alive, and send him back to his master. Perez says that when his flight was known at the Court, there was general satisfaction. 'Uncle Martin,' the palace jester, said to Philip the next morning, 'Sir, all the world rejoices at the escape of Antonio Perez; he cannot be very wicked; you should rejoice too.' Philip did not rejoice at all. He had put himself in the power of one of his subjects, and he did not choose to remain any longer in so degrading a position. When he had been himself willing to submit his conduct to a judicial inquiry, Perez, who had less to fear if he had been acting uprightly, had shown so much unwillingness that possibly Philip may have now doubted whether Escovedo's

conduct had after all been properly represented to him. Perez had fled, carrying the compromising documents along with him; he was probably on his way to France, to delight Philip's enemies with the sight of them, and with the tale of his own wrongs.

Anticipating pursuit, Perez had sent a friend, Gil de Mesa, to the Grand Justiciary, to signify his arrival, and to put himself under the protection of the law. Meanwhile, the town mob at Calatayud rose in his defence, and when Don Manuel arrived at the monastery he found the priests and students in arms to protect their sanctuary. Fifty soldiers arrived immediately after from Saragossa. The orders of the Justiciary were to bring Perez at once to the national prison of the Manifestacion, where he was to be detained till the King could be communicated with. The King's reply was an order to the Marquis of Almenara to prosecute him immediately in the Court of Aragon on three charges.

1. For having caused the death of Escovedo, falsely pretending the King's authority.

2. For having betrayed secrets of State and tampered with ciphered despatches.

3. For having fled from justice when his conduct was being judicially inquired into.

If Perez had been wholly innocent, he would have felt that he had at last an opportunity of setting himself clear in the face of the world. The court would be open, the trial public, and his defence could neither be garbled nor suppressed. His reluctance was as vehement as ever, and was not concealed by his affectation of a desire to spare his master. From Calatayud, and from Saragossa afterwards, he wrote letter upon letter both to Philip and to Diego de Chaves, protesting his loyalty, entreating to be left in quiet with his wife and children; indicating that he had the

means of defending himself, but hoping that he might not be forced to use them. These letters being left unanswered, he took into his confidence a distinguished Aragonese ecclesiastic, the Prior of Gotor. He showed the Prior the mysterious papers which he had brought with him, with Philip's notes upon them, and desired him to go at once to Madrid and demand an audience of Philip. 'His Majesty,' Perez said in his instructions to the Prior, 'must know that I possess these documents. They contain confidential secrets affecting others besides Escovedo; let his Majesty judge whether it is desirable that evidences should be produced in court which touch the reputation of distinguished persons, which will create a scandal throughout Europe, and will reflect on the prudence and piety of his Majesty himself. Though the confessor has taken most of my papers from me, Providence has been pleased that I should retain these, and these will suffice for my defence. If brought to trial I shall certainly be acquitted, but I prefer to save the King's reputation; my case is now notorious, and it will not be wise to challenge the world's opinion. I have been shorn like a lamb for eleven years, and I have held my peace. My blood has been shed. I have been tortured in a dungeon, and I have remained faithful. In eight or ten days I must give in my answer. Some people tell me that I ought rather to lose my head than speak; but if I am driven to it the truth must be told.'

The Prior went. Philip saw him more than once, and heard what he had to say. There could be no doubt that Perez had the compromising letters, for the Prior had seen them. Yet Philip's courage did not fail him. After Perez's flight the Court of Castile had given judgment against him in default. He was to be dragged through the streets and hanged. His head was to be cut off and exposed, and all his property was to be confiscated. The answer to the

mission of the Prior of Gotor was the publication of his sentence.

Perez thus driven to bay took up the challenge. He drew a memorial containing his own account of the causes of Escovedo's murder. He attached it to such notes as sufficed to prove the King's complicity, reserving others in case of future necessity; and this was publicly presented as his reply to the Marquis of Almenara. The King had probably expected that the judges of Aragon would not lightly accept so grave a charge against their sovereign; that they would respect the sentence of the better informed Court of Castile, and would understand that there was something behind which was left unexplained. But Aragon was excited, and chose to show its independence. After the admission of the memorial Don Inigo sent word to the King, that if no further evidence were produced, Perez would certainly be acquitted. The King believed that he had other resources at his disposition by which complete defeat could be avoided, and at the last moment directed that the case before the Grand Justiciary should be abandoned. 'If,' said Philip, 'it was possible to reply with the same publicity which Perez has given to his defence, his guilt would be proved, and he would be condemned. Throughout this whole affair I have considered only the public good. The long imprisonment of Perez, the entire course which the cause has taken, has had no other object. Abusing my clemency, and afraid of the issue, he so defends himself that to answer him I must publish secrets which ought not to be revealed, and involve persons whose reputation is of more consequence than the punishment of a single offender. Therefore, I shall go no further with the prosecution in the Court of Aragon. I declare Perez to have sinned worse than ever vassal sinned before against his sovereign—both in time, form, and circumstance; and I desire this my

declaration to be entered with my notice of withdrawal. Truth, which I have always maintained, must suffer no injury. And I reserve such rights as appertain, or may appertain to me, of bringing the offender to account for his crimes in any other manner.'

The 'other manner' was through the Court of Enquesta. In the Constitution of Aragon, a special reservation excluded from protection the King's servants and officials. Over these the law of the province had no more authority than the King was pleased to allow—and the King under this clause claimed to have Perez surrendered to himself. The local lawyers, however, interpreted 'servants' to mean only servants in Aragon and engaged in the affairs in Aragon, not persons belonging to other countries or other provinces. Aragonese, who accepted Crown employment, undertook it with their eyes open and at their own risk, and might be supposed to have consented to their exemption; but such a case as that of Perez had not been contemplated when the clause in the Constitution was allowed. But the King had one more resource. Though acquitted, the prisoner was still detained, as if the authorities were unsatisfied of his real innocence. Perez had grown impatient, and, in his loose, vain way, had babbled to his companions in the Manifestacion, and his language had been so extravagant that it had been noted down and forwarded to the court. He had threatened to fly to France or Holland, when he would make the King repent of his treatment of him. He had compared himself to Marius, who had been driven into exile and had returned to the consulship. He said that he would raise a revolt in Castile; he would bring in Henry the Fourth; he would make Aragon into a Free Republic like Venice. He spoke of Philip as another Pharaoh. He had ventured into more dangerous ground, and had called into question the mys-

teries of the faith. Some of these rash expressions had been noted down in writing, with the solemn reflections on them of the King's confessor. The impatient wretch had said, that 'if God the Father allowed the King to behave so disloyally to him he would take God the Father by the nose.' The confessor observes, 'This proposition is blasphemous, scandalous, offensive to pious ears, and savouring of the heresy of the Vadiani, who affirmed that God was corporeal and had human members. Nor was it an excuse to say that Christ, being made man, had a nose, since the words were spoken of the First Person.'

Again, Perez had said, 'God is asleep in this affair of mine. If He works no miracle for me, it will go near to destroy the faith.'

'This proposition,' the confessor noted, 'is scandalous. The prisoner has been accused of the greatest enormities; he has been tried by course of law and condemned to death, and he speaks as if he was without fault.'

Worse still. Perez had gone on, 'God sleeps! God sleeps! God is an idle tale; there cannot be a God!'

The confessor observes, 'This proposition is heretical, as if God had no care for human things, when the Bible and the Church affirm that he does care. To say that there cannot be a God *is* heresy, for though it be said in doubt, yet doubt is not allowed in matters of faith; we must believe without doubt.'

Lastly, Perez had said, 'If things pass thus, I cannot believe in God.'

The confessor notes, 'This is blasphemous, scandalous, and offensive, and savours of heresy also.'

The confessor's ears had no doubt been outraged. Many a poor sinner had gone to the stake for less audacious utterances. For nine months after the failure with the Enquesta, Perez remained in the Manifestacion, pouring

out these wild outcries. At the end of them an order came from the Holy Office at Madrid to the three Inquisitors at Saragossa to take possession of his person and remove him to their own prison in the old Moorish palace of the Aljaferia.

The Inquisitor-General of Spain was his old friend the Archbishop of Toledo. In Madrid the Inquisition had been well disposed towards him, and once he had thrown himself on its protection. Had he now submitted voluntarily, he would probably have been safe from serious injury, and an impartial decision would have been arrived at. The Inquisition, be it remembered, was no slave of the Crown, and, though a cruel guardian of orthodoxy, would not have looked too narrowly at the fretful words of a man whom the Archbishop believed to have been ill used. The judges of Aragon were by this time satisfied that Perez was not entirely the martyr which he pretended to be, and that the King had something to say for himself. Philip, who appears to Protestant Europe a monster of injustice, was in Spain respected and esteemed. The Grand Justiciary did not wish to quarrel with the Crown in a case so doubtful, still less to quarrel with the Holy Office, and was preparing quietly to comply. But Perez would not have it so, and preferred to trust to popular jealousy. A mob is always ready to listen when it is told that Liberty is in danger. A story was circulated in Saragossa that the Marquis of Almenara had bribed the prisoners in the Manifestacion to send in a false account of Perez's language, that the Inquisition was claiming a right which did not belong to it, that the Fueros were being betrayed, and that the Aragonese were to be made slaves of the Castilians. Symptoms showed themselves of an intended rising, and the Justiciary and Don Inigo, after a night's conference, agreed that Perez should be removed at once and without notice to the

Inquisition prison. At noon on May 24, 1591, he was quietly placed in a carriage at the Manifestacion Gate. A knot of young men tried to stop the horses, and clamoured for the Constitution; but they were told that it was *cosa de fey*, an affair of religion, and that they must mind their own business. The carriage reached the Aljaferia without interruption, and Perez was in the Inquisitors' hands. But on the instant Saragossa was in arms. The alarm bell boomed out. The market-place swarmed with a furious multitude shouting 'Fueros, Fueros! Libertad, Libertad!' Their plans had been already laid. Half the mob went to attack the Aljaferia, the others to the house of Philip's representative, the Marquis of Almenara. He, too, it is likely, had remembered that Perez was the friend of the Princess of Eboli, and had thrown himself into the quarrel with some degree of personal animosity. He was now to expiate his eagerness. He was urged to fly. The Mendozas, he answered, never fled. The palace door was dashed in. The Justiciary, who had hurried to protect him, was thrown down and trampled on. Don Inigo was seized, dragged out, and borne away among cries of 'Muera, muera! Kill him, kill him!' Stripped naked, his clothes torn off, his arms almost forced out of their sockets, struck and pelted with stones, he was at last rescued by a party of police, who carried him into the city prison. There, a fortnight after, he died of his injuries, so ending his lawsuit with the widow of Ruy Gomez.

The Inquisitors at the Aljaferia had a near escape of the same fate. The walls were strong and the gates massive. But the fierce people brought faggots in cartloads, and raised a pile which would have reduced the palace and all in it to dust and ashes. The Inquisitors, they said, had burnt others; they should now burn themselves unless Perez was instantly released. The Inquisitors would have

held out, but the Archbishop of Saragossa, Almenara's brother, insisted that they must yield. Perez, four hours only after they had seized him, was given back to his friends, and borne away in triumph.

But the mob had risen for the rights of Aragon, and not, after all, for a prisoner of whose innocence even they were unconvinced. Perez imagined himself a national hero. He had expected that the Cortes would take up his case, that he would be allowed to present himself at the bar, and detail the story of his wrongs in Philip's own presence. The leaders of the people had formed a cooler estimate of his merits. They contented themselves with taking him back to the Manifestacion. The officials of the province went up to Madrid, to deliberate with the court what was next to be done.

For Perez personally there was no enthusiasm. If the Inquisition would acknowledge the Fueros, the sensible people of Saragossa were ready to surrender him. The Inquisition made the necessary concessions, and Perez's own supporters now advised him to submit unreservedly. But this he did not dare to do; he tried to escape from the Manifestacion and failed. He appealed again to the mob. Broad sheets were printed and circulated declaring that the officials were betraying the Fueros, and though the chiefs of the first insurrection had withdrawn, the multitude could still be wrought upon. Unfortunately for Aragon, the Grand Justiciary, Don Juan de Lanuza, a wise and prudent man, suddenly died. Had he lived a few weeks longer he might have saved his country, but it was not so to be. The nomination of his successor belonged to the King, but the office had by custom become hereditary in the Lanuza family; Don Juan's son, a generous hot-headed youth, claimed to act without waiting for the King's sanction, and, fatally for himself, was ruled or influenced by his uncle, Don Martin,

who was Perez's most intimate ally. The officials had returned from the court. The Council of Saragossa had decided that Perez should be restored to the Holy Office. The removal was to be effected on the following morning, September 24; but when the morning came the mob were out again. The Manifestacion was broken open, the council room was set on fire, and Perez was again released. It was understood, however, that he was not to remain any longer at Saragossa to be a future occasion of quarrel. He was escorted a league out of the city on the road to the Pyrenees, and he was made to know that if he returned he would not be protected. He did return; he pretended that the roads were unsafe, but he came back in secret, and in the closest disguise, and lay concealed in Don Martin's house till it could be seen how the King would act.

Constitutional governments which cannot govern are near their end. When the intelligent and the educated part of the population are superseded by the mob, they cannot continue zealous for forms of freedom which to them are slavery. The mob has usurped the power; if it can defend its actions successfully, it makes good the authority which it has seized; if it fails, the blame is with itself. The Aragon executive had protected Perez on his arrival in the province, they had given him the means of making an open defence, and, so far as their own council could decide in his cause, they had pronounced him acquitted. But there were charges against him which could not be openly pleaded, and his innocence was not so clear that it would be right as yet to risk a civil war in a case so ambiguous. The judges considered that enough had been done. The mob and the young Justiciary thought otherwise, and with them the responsibility rested.

Philip was in no hurry. Ten thousand men were collected quietly on the frontier under Don Alonzo de Vargas.

The sentiments of the principal persons were sounded, and it was ascertained that from those who could offer serious resistance there was none to be anticipated. Liberty had lost its attractions when it meant the protection of criminals by the town rabble. That the mob had shaken themselves clear of Perez made little difference to Philip, for they had taken him by force out of prison. The middle-class citizens, who still prized their Constitution, believed, on the other hand, or at least some of them believed, that the King had no longer an excuse for interfering with them. Philip so far respected their alarm that before he ordered the advance of the troops he sent out a proclamation that the Constitution would not be disturbed; and possibly, if there had been no opposition, he would have found his course less clear. But the more eager spirits could not be restrained; the nobles held aloof; the young Justiciary, however, was ardent and enthusiastic—he was compromised besides, for he had taken office without waiting for the King's permission. The invasion was an open breach of the Fueros. He called the citizens of Saragossa to arms, and sent appeals for help to Barcelona and the other towns.

There was no response—a sufficient proof either that the province was indifferent, or that the cause was regarded as a bad one. Lanuza led out a tattered multitude of shopkeepers and workmen to meet the Castilians; but, though brave enough in a city insurrection, they had no stomach for fighting with a disciplined force. They turned and scattered without a blow, and Alonzo de Vargas entered Saragossa November 12, 1591.

The modern doctrine, that political offences are virtues in disguise, was not yet the creed even of the most advanced philosophers. The Saragossa rabble had resisted the lawful authorities of the province. They had stormed a prison; they had murdered the King's representative; fatallest of

all, they had taken arms for liberty, and had wanted courage to fight for it. The Justiciary was executed, and fifteen or twenty other persons. The attack on the Aljaferia was an act of sacrilege, and the wrongs of the Inquisition were avenged more severely. A hundred and twenty-three of the most prominent of the mob were arrested. Of these, seventy-nine were burnt in the market place. The ceremony began at eight in the morning; it closed at night, when there was no light but from the blazing faggots; the last figure that was consumed was the effigy of Antonio Perez, the original cause of the catastrophe. The punishment being concluded, the Constitution was abolished. The armed resistance was held to have dispensed with Philip's promises, and the Fueros of Aragon were at an end.

Perez himself escaped on the night on which the Castilians entered, and made his way through the Pyrenees to Pau. He published a narrative of his sufferings—that is, his own version of them, with the further incriminating documents which the Protestant world at once received with greedy acclamations. Much of what he said was probably true; much might have worn another complexion if the other side had been told. But Philip never condescended to reply. Perez was taken up by Henry the Fourth, pensioned, trusted, and employed so long as the war with Spain continued. He was sent into England. He was received by Elizabeth; entertained by Essex, and admitted into acquaintance by Francis Bacon—not with the approval of Bacon's mother, who disliked him from the first. He was plausible; he was polished; he was acute. He had been so long intimately acquainted with Spanish secrets, that his information was always useful and often of the highest value. But he was untrue at the heart. Even his own *Relacion* is in many points inconsistent with itself, and betrays the inward hollowness; while his estimate of his

own merits went beyond what his most foolish friends could believe or acknowledge. Gradually he was seen through both in Paris and London. When peace came he was thrown aside, and sank into neglect and poverty. He attempted often, but always fruitlessly, to obtain his pardon from Philip the Third, and eventually died miserably in a Paris lodging, a worn-out old man of seventy-two, on November 3, 1611.

So ends the story of a man who, if his personal merits alone were concerned, might have been left forgotten among the unnumbered millions who have played their chequered parts on the stage of the world. Circumstances, and the great religious revolution of the sixteenth century, converted Philip in the eyes of half Europe into a malignant demon. The darkest interpretations were thrown upon every unexplained action which he committed; and Antonio Perez became the hero of a romance fitter for a third-rate theatre than the pages of accredited history. The imaginative features of it have now disappeared, but there remains an instructive picture of Philip's real character. He said that he had been guided throughout by no motive save concern for the public welfare, and there is no reason to suppose that he was saying anything except what he believed to be true; yet he so acted as to invite suspicion in every step which he took.

Escovedo, as his conduct was represented by Perez, deserved to be punished, perhaps to be punished severely. To prosecute him publicly would have been doubtless inconvenient; and Philip, without giving him an opportunity of defending himself, undertook the part of a secret providence, and allowed him to be struck in the dark without explaining his reasons. Providence does not permit vain mortals, even though they be Catholic kings, to usurp a jurisdiction which is reserved for itself. It punished Philip by throwing him

into the power of an unscrupulous intriguer, who had, perhaps, in some measure really misled him on the extent of Escovedo's faults.

He tried to extricate himself, but he was entangled in the net which his own hands had woven; and, when Perez refused to assist him, and preferred to keep him struggling at his mercy, he was driven to measures which could be represented to the world as a base persecution of the instrument of his own crimes. Thus out of an unwise ambition to exercise the attributes of omniscience, the poor King laid himself open to groundless accusations, and the worst motives which could be supposed to have actuated him were those which found easiest credit.

But the legend of the loves of Philip the Second and the Princess of Eboli was not of Spanish growth. The *Relacion* of Perez was read in the Peninsula, but it did not shake the confidence with which Philip was regarded by his subjects. The Fueros of Aragon perished, but they perished only because constitutional liberties which degenerate into anarchy are already ripe for an end.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

SAINT TERESA [1]

Reprinted from the 'Quarterly Review'

On the western slope of the Guadarrama mountains, midway between Medina del Campo and the Escurial, stands the ancient town of Avila. From the windows of the railway carriage can be seen the massive walls and flanking towers, raised in the eleventh century in the first heat of the Spanish crusade. The fortifications themselves tell the story of their origin. The garrison of Avila were soldiers of Christ, and the cathedral was built into the bastions, in the front line of defence, as an emblem of the genius of the age. Time has scarcely touched the solid masonry. Ruy Diaz and his contemporaries have vanished into legend; but these silent monuments of the old Castilian character survive to remind us what manner of men the builders of them were. Revolutions on revolutions overflow the Spanish peninsula, condemn the peasantry to poverty, and the soil to barrenness; but they have not in these later times unearthed in the process a single man like those whose names are part of European history. They have produced military adventurers, and orators like Castelar, of 'transcendent eloquence'; but no Cid, no Grand Captain, no Alva, not even a Cortez or a Pizarro. The Progresista of our age has a long ascent before him if he is to rise to the old level.

The situation of Avila is extremely picturesque, standing

[1] 1. *Acta S. Teresiæ a Jesu, Carmelitarum strictioris Observantiæ Parentis.* Illustrata a Josepho Vandermoere, Societatis Jesu Presbytero Theologo. Bruxellis, 1845. 2. *Obras de Santa Teresa de Jesus.* Barcelona, 1844.

in the midst of grey granite sierras, covered with pine forests, and intersected with clear mountain rivulets. It is now thinly populated, and, like most towns in Spain, has fallen into decay and neglect; but the large solid mansions, the cathedral, the churches, the public buildings, the many convents and monasteries, though mostly gone to waste and ruin, show that once it was full of busy, active life, of men and women playing their parts there in the general drama of their country.

In the Spain of Ferdinand and Isabella there were two peculiarities: first, that there was no recognised capital, for the provinces which formed the monarchy were still imperfectly cemented; and secondly, that the nobles and gentry, the señores and the hidalgos, had their chief residences in the towns, and not on their estates. The causes and consequences of this practice of theirs it would be interesting to trace, were the present the occasion for it, but of the fact itself there is no doubt at all. Of feudal châteaux and manor-houses, so numerous in France and England, there were not many in any part of Spain, and very few in the Castiles. The landed aristocracy congregated within the walls of the provincial cities. Their palaces are still to be seen in grand and gaunt neglect, with their splendid staircases, their quadrangles, their columned verandahs, the coats of arms carved over the portals. In the cities also were the learned professions: the lawyers, the doctors, the secular clergy, the religious orders. The Court moved from place to place, and there was no central focus to draw away men of superior rank or superior talents from their local homes. The communications were difficult; the roads were horse-tracks; the rivers, save where some enterprising municipality had built a bridge, were crossed only by fords and pontoons. Thus each important town was the heart of a separate district, a

complete epitome of Spanish life, with all its varied circles. An aristocracy was in each, proud and exclusive. A religious world was in each; a world of art and literature, of commerce and adventure. Every family had some member pushing his fortunes in the army or in the New Hemisphere. The minds of men were in full activity. They were enterprising and daring. Their manners were polished, and their habits splendid; for into Spain first had poured the fruits of the discoveries of Columbus, and the stream of gold was continually growing with fresh conquests. Perhaps nowhere on the earth was there a finer average of distinguished and cultivated society than in the Provincial Castilian cities, as it is described in Cervantes's novels. The Castilians were a nation of gentlemen, high bred, courteous, chivalrous. In arms they had no rivals. In art and literature Italy alone was in advance of them, and Italy led by no great interval; while the finest characteristics were to be met with equally in every part of the country.

They were a sincere people too; Catholic in belief, and earnestly meaning what they professed. In the presence of the Moors, Christianity had retained its mediæval features. Of Christianity itself they knew no form, and could conceive of none, save that for which they had fought against the Moslem; and the cause of the Church was the cause of patriotism. Therefore, when the Reformation began in Germany, the Spaniard naturally regarded its adherents as the old enemy in another dress. An Italian priest could mutter at the altar, 'Bread thou art, and bread thou wilt remain.' No such monster could have been found in the Spanish Peninsula. Leo the Tenth was said to have called Christianity a profitable fable. To the subjects of Isabella it was a truth, which devils only could deny.

The Northern nations revolted from the Church in the

name of liberty. The Spaniards loved liberty, but it was the liberty of their country, for which they had been fighting for centuries against the Infidel. As aristocrats, they were instinctively on the side of authority. United among themselves, they believed in the union of Christendom; and they threw themselves into the struggle against heresy with the same enthusiasm with which they contended with the Crescent in the Mediterranean. They sent their chivalry to the Low Countries as if to a crusade. Two Spaniards, Ignatius Loyola and Francis Xavier, created the spiritual army of the Jesuits. While some were engaged with the enemy abroad, the finer spirits among them undertook the task of setting in order their own house at home. They, too, required a Reformation, if they were to be fit champions of a Holy Cause; and the instrument was a woman, with as few natural advantages as Ignatius himself, distinguished only in representing, as he did, the vigorous instincts of the Spanish character.

The Church of Rome, it has been said, does not, like the Church of England, drive her enthusiasts into rebellion, but preserves and wisely employs them. She may employ them wisely while they are alive, but when they are dead she decks them out in paint and tinsel, to be worshipped as divinities. Their history becomes a legend. They are surrounded with an envelope of lies. Teresa of Avila has fared no better than other saints in the calendar. She has been the favourite idol of modern Spain, and she deserved more modest treatment.

The idolatry may merit all that Mr. Ford has said about it, but the account which he has given of the lady herself is so wide of the original, that it is not even a caricature. Ford, doubtless, did not like Catholic saints, and the absurdities told about them disgusted him; but the materials lay before him for a real portrait of Teresa,

had he cared to examine them; and it is a pity that he did not, for no one could have done better justice to his subject.

Teresa de Cepeda was born at Avila on March 28, 1515—the time, according to her biographer, 'when Luther was secreting the poison which he vomited out two years later.' . . . She was one of a large family, eleven children in all, eight sons and three daughters. Her father, Don Alfonso, was twice married. Teresa's mother was the second wife, Beatrice de Ahumada, a beautiful, imaginative woman, whom bad health confined chiefly to a sofa. The Cepedas were of honourable descent; Don Alfonso was a gentleman of leisure and moderate fortune. He spent his time, when not engaged with works of charity, in reading Spanish literature—chiefly Church history and lives of the saints. His library, if the Barber and Curate had sat upon it, would have been sifted as ruthlessly as the shelves of the Ingenious Knight of La Mancha, for half of it was composed of books of Knight Errantry—the same volumes probably which those stern Inquisitors condemned to the flames. These books were devoured as eagerly by the delicate Beatrice as the graver pages by her husband, and her example was naturally imitated by her children. They sat up at nights in their nursery over Rolando and Don Belianis and Amadis of Gaul. Teresa composed odes to imaginary cavaliers, who figured in adventures of which she was herself the heroine. They had to conceal their tastes from their father, who would not have approved of them. He was a very good man, exceptionally good. He treated his servants as if they were his sons and daughters. He was never heard to swear, or to speak ill of anyone. He was the constant friend of the Avila poor. If too indulgent, he had sense and information, and when he discerned what was going on, he diverted Teresa's tastes

in a safer direction. By nature, she says, she was the least religious of her family, but her imagination was impressible, and she delighted in all forms of human heroism. She early forgot her knights, and devoted herself to martyrs; and here, being concrete and practical, she thought she would turn her new enthusiasm to account. If to be in heaven was to be eternally happy, and martyrs went to heaven straight, without passing through Purgatory, she concluded that she could do nothing more prudent than become a martyr herself. When she was seven years old, she and her little brother Antonio actually started off to go to the Moors, who they expected would kill them. The children had reached the bridge on the stream which runs through the town, when an uncle met them and brought them back. As they could not be martyrs, they thought, as next best, that they would be hermits. They gave away their pocket-money to beggars. They made themselves cells in the garden. Teresa's ambition grew. When other girls came to see her, they played at nunneries, when she was perhaps herself the abbess. Amidst these fancies her childish years passed away. She does not seem to have had much regular teaching. Nothing is said about it; and when she grew up she had difficulty in reading her Latin Breviary.

The Knight Errantry books, however, had left their traces. Her mother died while she was still very young, and she was much affected. But natural children do not long continue miserable. As she passed into girlhood, her glass told her that she was pretty, and she was pleased to hear it. She was moderately tall, well shaped, with a fine complexion, round brilliant black eyes, black hair crisp and curly, good teeth, and firmly chiselled lips and nose. So fair a figure deserved that pains should be taken with it. She was particular about her dress; she liked perfumes;

her small dainty hands were kept scrupulously white. Cousins male and female went and came; and there were small flirtations with the boys, and with the girls not very wise confidences. One girl cousin there was especially, whom the mother, while she lived, would not allow to visit at the house, and whom an elder sister would still have kept at a distance had she been able. But Teresa was wilful, and chose this especial young lady as her principal companion. There were also silly servants, too ready to encourage folly, and Teresa says that at this time nothing but regard for her honour kept her clear of serious scrapes.

Don Alfonso grew uneasy; the elder sister married and went away; so, feeling unequal himself to the task of managing a difficult subject, he sent Teresa to be educated in an Augustinian convent in the town. Neither her father nor she had any thoughts of her adopting a religious life. He never wished it at any time. She did not wish it then, and had undefined notions of marrying as her sister had done. The convent to her was merely a school, where there were many other girls of her own age, nor did she wholly like the life there. She made friends among the elder nuns, especially with one, a simple pious woman, who slept in the same room with her. But the younger sisters were restless. They had acquaintances in the town, and were occupied with other things beside religious vows. Within the convent itself all was not as it should have been. The vicar of the Order had the whole spiritual management both of the nuns and of their pupils. No one but himself might hear their confessions, and the prioress could not interfere with him, since by his position he was her superior. Teresa does not hint that there was anything positively wrong, but when she came to lay down rules in later years for the regulation of her own houses, she

refers to her recollections of what went on in language curiously frank:—

'The confessor in a convent,' she says, 'ought not to be the vicar or the visitor. He may take a special interest in some sister. The Prioress will be unable to prevent him from talking to her, and a thousand mischiefs may follow. . . . The sisters should have no intercourse with the confessor except at the confessional. . . . The very existence of our institutions depends on preventing *these black devotees* from destroying the spouses of Christ. The devil enters that way unperceived.'[1]

The vicar confessor encouraged Teresa in her views for marriage, but her fancies and her friendship were suddenly broken off by an attack of illness. She required change of air; she was sent on a visit to her sister; and on her way home she spent a few days with an uncle, a man of secluded and saintly habits, who afterwards withdrew into a monastery. The uncle advised his niece to take the same step that he was himself meditating; and she discussed the question with herself in the same spirit with which she had designed throwing herself among the Moors. She reflected that convent discipline might be painful, but it could not be as painful as Purgatory, while if she remained in the world she might come to something worse than Purgatory. She read St. Jerome's Epistles; she then consulted her father, and was distressed to meet with strong objections. Don Alfonso was attached to his children, and Teresa was his especial favourite. The utmost that she could obtain was a permission to do as she pleased after his own death. But 'a vocation' was held to dispense with duties to parents. She made up her own mind, and, like Luther,

[1] 'Va nos todo nuestro Ser, en quitar la ocasion para que no haya estos negros devotos destruidores de las esposas de Christo, que es menester pensar siempre en lo peor que puede suceder, para quitar esta ocasion, que se entra sin sentirlo por aqui el demonio.'—*Cartas de la Santa Madre*, vol vi. p. 232.

she decided to act for herself, and to take a step which, when once accomplished, could not be recalled. One morning she left her home with her brother, and applied for admission at the Carmelite Convent of the Incarnation. She was then eighteen. She had been disappointed with the Augustinians; but the Carmelites had a reputation for superior holiness, and she threw herself among them with the passionate enthusiasm of an ardent girl, who believed that she was securing her peace in this world, and happiness in the next. Again she was to be undeceived. The Order of Mount Carmel had been founded by Albert, Patriarch of Jerusalem, in the second Crusade. The rule had been austere—austere as the rule of the Carthusians—with strict seclusion, silence, solitude, the plainest dress, the most ascetic diet. But by the beginning of the sixteenth century time and custom had relaxed the primitive severity, and Carmelite convents had become a part of general society; the nuns within the cloisters living and occupying themselves in a manner not very different from their friends outside, with whom they were in constant communication. Austerity was still possible, but it was not insisted on, and was a sign of presumption and singularity. In the 'Incarnation' there were a hundred and ninety sisters, and the discipline among them was scarcely more than a name. They went in and out as they pleased; they received visits and returned them; they could be absent from the cloister for months at a time. Catholics accuse Protestants of having libelled the monastic life of Europe as it existed before the Reformation. Luther himself has said nothing harsher of it than the saint of Avila. She followed the stream, she said; she abandoned herself to vanity and amusement, and neither custom nor the authority of her superiors laid the slightest check upon her. She had as much liberty as she liked to ask for, and

liberty in a convent meant free opportunities of evil. She does not assert that there was gross licentiousness; but she does assert that to 'ill-disposed women' convent life 'was rather a road to hell than an aid to weakness'; and that 'parents would do better to marry their daughters honestly than to place them in relaxed houses of religion':—

'The girls themselves,' she says, 'are not so much to blame, for they do no worse than they see others do. They enter convents to serve the Lord and escape the dangers of the world, and they are flung into ten worlds all together, with youth, sensuality, and the devil, tempting them to evil. . . . In the same house are two roads, one leading to virtue and piety, another leading *away* from virtue and piety; and the road of religion is so little travelled, that a sister who wishes to follow it has more to fear from her companions than from all the devils. She finds it easier far to make intimacies with the devil's instruments than to seek friendship with God.'

How dangerous this lax temper might have been to herself Teresa tells us in an instructive incident. Her health was never strong, and the convent had disagreed with her. She was sick every morning, and could touch no food till noon. She often fainted, and there were symptoms of heart disorder. Nor was she happy in herself. She had tried to be good, and had only made enemies by her efforts. She found herself rebuked for small offences of which she was wholly innocent. She lived much alone, and the sisters thought she was discontented. Her father became alarmed for her, and again sent her away into the country, with a single nun for a companion. At the place where she went to reside there was an attractive priest, a man of intellect and culture. Teresa was fond of cultivated men. She took the priest for her confessor, and found him more and more agreeable.

He flattered her conscience by telling her that she could never wish to do wrong. He said it was his own case also, and they became extremely intimate. She was informed after a time that this charmingly innocent person had been living for some years with a female companion, while he continued to say mass as if nothing were the matter. She was at first incredulous. She made inquiries, but the scandal was notorious. Everyone was aware of it, but the offender had influence, and it was unsafe to interfere with him. Even so, however, Teresa would not abandon her friend, and looked for excuses for him. The woman, she found, had given him an amulet, and while he wore it he was under a spell. He told her this himself, and her interest was now increased by pity and anxiety. She admits that she was unwise, that she ought at once to have ended the acquaintance. She preferred to endeavour to save a perishing soul. She was but twenty; she was very beautiful; she spoke to the attractive sinner of God; and of course to a lesson from such lips he was delighted to listen. She perceived the cause, but was not discouraged. She pressed him to give her the amulet, and equally of course he consented. She threw it into the river, and he at once broke off his guilty connection, and devoted himself to spiritual communion with herself. She flattered herself that he was penitent, though it was equally clear that he was in love with her; and he abandoned himself to his affection with the less reserve, because she says he had confidence in her virtue, and supposed that he could do so without danger. The danger was as great as it usually is under such circumstances. They had 'opportunities of sin,' she said, and though she believed that they would not have fallen mortally, she admits that they might have gone seriously wrong if they had not kept God before their eyes. The priest died a year after, and,

as Teresa observes naïvely, was delivered from further temptation. She long retained some tenderness for him; twenty years later, when she wrote the story, she expressed a conviction that he was saved: but the experience must have helped her to the opinion, which she afterwards so strongly insisted on, that confessors were the most unsafe of friends.

After this adventure, which she relates with perfect simplicity, she returned to the convent. Her health was not improved. She was still constantly sick; she had paroxysms of pain; her nervous system was shattered, and the physicians were afraid of madness. In this state she remained for three years. At the end of them it occurred to her to pray for help to San Josef. From some cause she became comparatively better; and to San Josef she supposed that she owed her recovery. 'God,' she says, 'has allowed other saints to help us on some occasions; my experience of this glorious saint is that he helps us in all: as if the Lord would teach us that, as he was subject to San Josef on earth, and San Josef was called his father though only his guardian, so San Josef, though in heaven, has still authority with him.'

The illness had become less acute; but, as the pain of body grew less, Teresa became conscious of spiritual maladies that were left uncured. 'She loved God with half her mind, but she loved the world with the other.' Her prayers troubled her, she says, for she could not fix her mind on them. Meditation was yet more difficult. 'She had a slow intellect and a torpid imagination.' She required a book to help her, for the right reflections and emotions would not occur to herself; other thoughts persisted in intruding themselves; and at length, being, as she was, a veracious woman, she abandoned prayer altogether. Among all her faults, she says she was never a hypocrite, and

prayer when it was no more than a form of words seemed an indecent mockery.

Her confessor, when she explained her troubles, only thought her morbid. In the convent she was regarded as exceptionally strict, and wide as was the general liberty, with her every rule was dispensed with. She spent her time in the society of Avila with more enjoyment than she was herself aware of, and when a pious old nun told her that she was causing scandal, she would not understand it, and was only angry.

'Unless God had brought me to the truth,' she says, 'I should most assuredly have gone at last to hell. I had many friends to help me to fall, while, as to rising again, I was utterly alone. My confessor did nothing for me. For twenty years I was tossed about on a stormy sea in a wretched condition, for if I had small content in the world, in God I had no pleasure. There were months, once there was an entire year, when I was careful not to offend ; but of all those years eighteen were years of battle. At prayer time I watched for the clock to strike the end of the hour. To go to the oratory was a vexation to me, and prayer itself a constant effort.'

Such was Teresa's conventual experience, as described by herself. She began her noviciate in 1534. The twenty years, therefore, extended to 1554, the year in which Philip went to England to be married to our Queen Mary. She was then nearly forty, and her efforts so far in the direction of religion had consisted rather in helping others (which she says she was always eager to do) than in framing any steady resolutions for herself. Her conversion, as it is called, her first attempt to think with real seriousness, was occasioned by the death of her father. She had watched by him in his last illness. She saw his spirit take flight, and heard the assurance of his Dominican confessor that it had gone straight to heaven. She had been deeply at-

tached to him. She woke up out of her irresolutions, and determined to use the rest of her life to better purpose than the beginning.

She was not a person to do anything by halves. She thought of Mary Magdalene. She read the 'Confessions' of St. Augustine, and saw an image there of her own state of mind. One day, as she was entering the oratory, she was struck by the sight of an image which had been brought thither for an approaching festival. It was a wounded Christ, the statue coloured with the painful realism which suited the Spanish taste, the blood streaming over the face from the thorns, and running from the side and the hands and feet. Protestants and Catholics experience an identical emotion when the meaning of Christianity is brought home to them. Each poor sinner recognizes, as by a flash of lightning, that these tortures were endured for him or her—that he or she was actually present in the Saviour's mind when he was suffering on the cross. The thought when it comes is overpowering. Teresa felt as if her heart was wrenched in two. She fell in tears at the feet of the figure. She did not seek for sentimental emotions. She surrendered herself wholly and for ever to the Being whose form was fastened on her soul, and from that moment every worldly feeling was gone, never to return. Her spiritual life had begun. She explains the condition in which she found herself by an image familiar to everyone who has seen the environs of a Spanish village. She apologises for its simplicity, but it is as true and pregnant as a Gospel parable.

'A man is directed to make a garden in a bad soil overrun with sour grasses. The lord of the land roots out the weeds, sows seeds, and plants herbs and fruit trees. The gardener must then care for them and water them, that they may thrive and blossom, and that "the Lord" may find pleasure in his

garden and come to visit it. There are four ways in which the watering may be done. There is water which is drawn wearily by hand from the well. There is water drawn by the ox-wheel, more abundantly and with lighter labour. There is water brought in from the river, which will saturate the whole ground; and, last and best, there is rain from heaven. Four sorts of prayer correspond to these. The first is a weary effort with small returns; the well may run dry; the gardener then must weep. The second is internal prayer and meditation upon God; the trees will then show leaves and flower-buds. The third is love of God. The virtues then become vigorous. We converse with God face to face. The flowers open and give out fragrance. The fourth kind cannot be described in words. Then there is no more toil, and the seasons no longer change; flowers are always blowing, and fruit ripens perennially. The soul enjoys undoubting certitude; the faculties work without effort and without consciousness; the heart loves and does not know that it loves; the mind perceives yet does not know that it perceives. If the butterfly pauses to say to itself how prettily it is flying, the shining wings fall off, and it drops and dies. The life of the spirit is not our life, but the life of God within us.'

This is very beautiful. It is the same, in fact, as what Bishop Butler says, in less ornamented prose, of the formation of moral habits. We first learn to do right with effort. The habit grows till it pervades the nature, and afterwards we act as we ought spontaneously, with no more consciousness than animals have, which do what they do by instinct.

But we are now on the edge of the abnormal features of Teresa's history, and before I enter on the subject I must explain briefly how I myself regard the aberrations which will have to be related. All physicians, all psychologists of reputation, agree that besides sleeping and waking there are other conditions—trances, ecstasies, catalepsies, and such like—into which the body is liable to fall; and, as in sleep images present themselves more vivid than can be called up by waking memory or waking fancy, so in

these exceptional states of the system peculiar phenomena appear, which are none the less real because fools or impostors have built extravagant theories upon them. The muscles sometimes become rigid, the senses become unnaturally susceptible. The dreaming power is extraordinarily intensified, and visions are seen (we say 'seen' for want of a more scientific expression) palpable as sense itself. Such conditions are usually brought about by ordinary causes. Perhaps they may be created artificially. They are not supernatural, for they have an exact analogy in the universal experience of sleep. They are considered supernatural only because they are exceptional, and the objects perceived are always supplied out of the stores with which memory is furnished. Teresa's health was peculiar. For twenty years she had been liable to violent nervous attacks—those, too, an imperfectly understood form of disorder. She was full-blooded, constantly sick, constantly subject to fainting fits and weakness of the heart. Her intellect and moral sense, on the other hand, were remarkably strong. She was not given to idle imaginations. She was true and simple, was never known to tell a lie or act one. But her mental constitution was unusual. Objects that interested her, she says, never ran into words, but fastened themselves as pictures upon her brain. Meadows, trees, and rivers, effects of sky, all materials of landscape beauty, gave her intense emotions, but emotions which she was unable to describe. She was a painter, but without the faculty of conveying her impressions to canvas. She perceived with extreme vividness, but the perception ended in itself. If she wanted phrases she had to look for them in books, and what she found in books did not satisfy her because it did not correspond to her own experience.

This was her general temperament, on which powerful religious emotion was now to work. The figure of Christ

had first awakened her. The shock threw her into a trance. The trances repeated themselves whenever she was unusually agitated. Such a person would inevitably see 'visions,' which she would be unable to distinguish from reality; and if she believed herself subject to demoniac or angelic visitations, she was not on that account either weak or dishonest.

In the life of everyone who has really tried to make a worthy use of existence, there is always a point—a point never afterwards forgotten—when the road has ceased to be downhill, and the climb upward has commenced. There has been some accident perhaps; or someone has died, or one has been disappointed in something on which the heart had been fixed, or some earnest words have arrested attention; at any rate, some seed has fallen into a soil prepared to receive it. This is called in religious language conversion; the turning away from sin and folly to duty and righteousness. Beginnings are always hard. Persons who have hitherto acted in one particular way, and suddenly change to another way, are naturally suspected of having unworthy personal motives. They have lived so far for themselves. They cannot be credited at once with having ceased to live for themselves. They must still be selfish. They must have some indirect object in view.

Teresa in her convent had resolved to be thenceforward a good woman, and to use to better purpose the means which the Church offered to her. She found at once that she was misunderstood and disliked. She wished to be peculiar, it was said; she wished to be thought a saint; she was setting herself up to be better than other people. Her trances and fits of unconsciousness were attributed to the most obvious cause. She was said to be 'possessed' by a devil. She had been humbled in her own eyes; and she herself thought that perhaps it was a devil. She could

not tell, and her spiritual adviser could not tell any better. The Jesuits were then rising into fame. Francisco Borgia, ex-Duke of Gandia, had joined them, and had been made Provincial General for Spain. He came to Avila, heard of Teresa, and took charge of her case. He put her under a course of discipline. He told her to flog herself with a whip of nettles, to wear a hair cloth plaited with broken wires, the points of which would tear her skin. Had her understanding been less robust, he would have driven her mad; as it was, he only intensified her nervous agitation. He bade her meditate daily on the details of Christ's passion. One day, while thus occupied, she became unconscious; her limbs stiffened, and she heard a voice say, 'Thou shalt no more converse with men, but with angels.' After this the fits always returned when she was at prayers. She saw no distinct form, but she felt that Christ was close to her. She told her confessor what she had experienced. He asked how she knew that it was Christ. She could not explain. A few days after, she was able to tell him that she had actually seen Christ. She had seen him, she said (without being aware that she was explaining from whence the figure had been derived), exactly as he was painted rising from the sepulchre. The story went abroad. The ill-natured sisters made spiteful remarks; the wisest shook their heads. Teresa had not been noted for special holiness in the many years that she had been among them. Others, much more like saints than she, had never seen anything wonderful; why should God select her to visit with such special favour? They were more clear than ever that she was possessed. She was preached at from the pulpit; she was prayed for in chapel as bewitched. She could not tell how to behave: if she was silent about her visions, it was deceit; if she spoke of them, it was vanity. She preserved her balance in this strange trial

remarkably well. Her confessor had been warned against her, and was as hard as the rest. She continued to tell him whatever she supposed herself to see and hear, and absolutely submitted to his judgment. He confidently assured her it was the devil, and directed her when Christ appeared next to make the sign of the cross and point her thumb at him. God would then deliver her. She obeyed, though with infinite pain. Christ's figure, whoever made it, ought, she thought, to be reverenced; and to point her thumb was to mock like the Jews. As her trances recurred always at her devotions, she was next forbidden to pray. Under these trials Christ himself interposed to comfort her. He told her that she was right in obeying her confessor, though the confessor was mistaken. The inhibition to pray, he said, was tyranny, and, in fact, it was not long maintained. The apparitions grew more frequent and more vivid. One day the cross attached to her rosary was snatched out of her hands, and when it was given back to her it was set with jewels more brilliant than diamonds. A voice said that she would always see it so, though to others it would seem as before. She had often an acute pain in her side; she fancied once that an angel came to her with a lance tipped with fire, which he struck into her heart. In after years, when she became legendary, it was gravely declared that the heart had been examined, and had been found actually pierced. A large drawing of it forms the frontispiece of the biography provided for the use of pious Catholics.

This condition continued for several years, and became the talk of Avila. Some held to the possession theory; others said it was imposture; others, especially as there was no further harm in poor Teresa, began to fancy that perhaps the visions were real. She herself knew not what to think. Excellent people were satisfied that she was

under a delusion, and the excellent people, she thought, might very likely be right, for the apparitions were not all of a consoling kind. She had seen Christ and the angels, but also she had seen the devil. 'Once,' she says, 'the devil appeared to me in the oratory; he spoke to me; his face was awful, and his body was of flame without smoke. He said that I had escaped him for the present, but he would have me yet. I made the sign of the cross; he went, but returned; I threw holy water at him, and then he vanished.' At another time she was taken into hell; the entrance was by a gloomy passage, at the end of which was a pool of putrid water alive with writhing snakes. She fancied that she was thrust into a hole in a wall where she could neither sit nor lie, and in that position was tortured with cramps. Other horrors she witnessed, but did not herself experience: she was shown only what would have been her own condition if she had not been rescued.

One act she records, exceedingly characteristic. Avila was not wholly unbelieving. Afflicted persons sometimes came to her for advice. Among the rest a priest came, who was living in mortal sin, miserable, yet unable to confess in the proper form, and so made fast in the bonds of Satan. Teresa prayed for him; and then he managed to confess, and for a time did not sin any more; but he told Teresa that the devil tortured him dreadfully, and he could not bear it. She then prayed that the tortures might be laid on her, and that the priest might be spared. For a month after the devil was allowed to work his will upon her. He would sit upon her breviary when she was reading, and her cell would fill with legions of imps.

An understanding of less than unusual strength would have broken down under so severe a trial. Teresa knew nothing of the natural capacities of a disordered animal system. She had been taught theologically that angels and

devils were everywhere busy, and it was inevitable that she should regard herself as under a preternatural dispensation of some kind; but, as long as she was uncertain of what kind, she kept her judgment undisturbed, and she thought and reasoned on the common subjects of the day like a superior person of ordinary faculty.

Society at Avila, as throughout Spain, was stormily agitated at the advance of the Reformation. From Germany it was passing to the Low Countries and into France. England, after a short-lived recovery, had relapsed into heresy, and dreadful stories were told of religious houses suppressed, and monks and nuns breaking their vows and defying heaven by marrying. Antichrist was triumphing, and millions of souls were rushing headlong into the pit. Other millions too of ignorant Indians, missionaries told her, were perishing also for want of vigour in the Church to save them. Teresa, since she had seen hell, had a very real horror of it. Torment without end! What heart could bear the thought of it? To rescue any single soul from so terrible a fate, she felt ready herself to die a thousand deaths; but what could one poor woman do at such a time—a single unit in a Spanish country town? Something was wrong when such catastrophes could happen. What the wrong was, she thought she saw within the limits of her own experience. The religious orders were the Church's regular soldiers. Their manual was their rule; their weapons were penance, prayer, and self-denial; and as long as they were diligent in the use of them, God's favour was secured, and evil could not prevail. But the rules had been neglected, penance laughed at, and prayer become half-hearted. Cloister discipline had been accommodated to the manners of a more enlightened age.

'Hôc fonte derivata clades
In patriam populumque fluxit.'

Here was the secret of the great revolt from the Church, in the opinion of Teresa, and it was at least part of the truth; for the cynical profligacy of the religious houses had provoked Germany and England more than any other cause. Teresa herself had learnt how little convent life in Spain could assist a soul in search of perfection. At the Incarnation she could not keep her vows if she wished to keep them; for the cloister gates were open, and the most earnest desire for seclusion could not ensure it. Friends who wanted a nun to visit them had only to apply to the provincial, and the provincial would give a dispensation, not as a permission, but as a mandate which was not to be disobeyed.

Puzzled with what she found, Teresa had studied the ancient rule of the Carmelite Order before it was relaxed by Eugenius the Fourth. If a house could be founded where that rule could be again kept, she considered, how much easier her own burden would be; how much better God would be served; and then, perhaps, the Church would regain her strength. No improvement could be looked for in the Convent of the Incarnation itself. Two hundred women, accustomed to indulgences which a Pope had sanctioned, were not likely to be induced to submit again to severities. She talked of her scheme with her friends in the town. The difficulties seemed enormous; she had no money to begin with, and her friends had little. If this obstacle could be overcome, she had another and a worse before her; she could do nothing without the consent of the provincial, and for such a consent she knew that it would be idle to ask. She was thinking the matter over one day after communion, when she fell into her usual trance. 'The Lord' appeared and told her that her design was to be carried out. A house was to be founded, and was to be dedicated to her old patron San Josef. It would become a star which would shine over

the earth. She was to tell her confessor what he had said, and to require him to make no opposition.

The apparition was a natural creation of her own previous musings, but it fell in so completely with her wishes that she would not and could not doubt. It appeared again and again. She wrote an account of it by her confessor's orders, and it was submitted to the provincial and the bishop. If they hesitated, it was but for a moment; they naturally consulted Teresa's prioress, and at once the tempest was let loose. 'This then,' exclaimed the incensed mother and the rest of the sisterhood, 'this is the meaning of the visions we have heard so much of. Sister Teresa thinks herself too good for us. We are not holy enough for her. Pretty presumption! Let her keep the rule as it stands before she talks of mending it.' From the convent the disturbance passed to the town. The Spaniards had no love for novelties; they believed in use, and wont, and the quiet maintenance of established things. They looked on ecstasies and trances as signs rather of insanity than sanctity; they thought that people should do their duty in the state of life to which they had been called, and duty was hard enough without artificial additions. Teresa's relations told the provincial she was out of her mind. Some thought a prison would be the best place for her: others hinted at the Inquisition and a possible trial for witchcraft. Her confessor called her scheme a woman's nonsense, and insisted that she should think no more of it.

She went for refuge to her master. The Lord told her that she was not to be disturbed; good things were always opposed when first suggested; she must wait quietly, and all would go well. Though Avila seemed unanimous in its condemnation, there were two priests there of some consequence—one a Dominican, the other a Franciscan—

who were more on a level with the times. They saw that something might be made of Teresa, and they wrote to their friends in Rome about her. Her Jesuit confessor held to his own opinion, but a new rector came to the college at Avila, with whom they also communicated. The rector, after a conversation with her, removed the confessor and appointed another. The provincial remained obstinate, but the bishop, Alvarez de Mendoza, was privately encouraging. Teresa was made to feel that she was not deserted, and, with a new spiritual director to comfort her, she took up her project again.

She was in a difficulty, for she was bound by her vows to obey the provincial; he had already refused his permission, and she dared not apply to him again. But she probably knew that an appeal had been made to the Pope, and, pending the results of this, she thought that she might begin her preparations. She had to be secret—almost deceitful; and might have doubted if she was keeping within even the letter of her duty if her visions had been less inspiriting. A widow friend in the town bought a house as if for her own private occupation. Alterations were wanted to make it suitable for a small convent, and Teresa had no money to pay for them; but San Josef told her to engage workmen, and that the money should be found; and in fact at that moment a remittance came unexpectedly from a brother in Lima. She was afraid of the Carmelite authorities. The house, Christ told her, should be under the bishop, and not under the Order; she was herself to be the superior, and she saw herself robed for office by San Josef and the Virgin in person.

Careful as she was, she still feared that the provincial would hear what she was doing, and would send her an inhibition, to which, if it came, she had resolved to submit. It became expedient for her to leave Avila till the answer from Rome could arrive. At that moment, most con-

veniently, Doña Aloysia de la Cerda, sister of the Duke of Medina Celi, wrote to the provincial to say that she wished Teresa to pay her a visit at her house at Toledo. Doña Aloysia was a great lady, whose requests were commands. The order came to her to go, and she was informed by the usual channel that the invitation had been divinely arranged. She was absent for six months, and became acquainted with the nature and habits of Spanish grandees. Doña Aloysia treated her with high distinction; she met other great people, and was impressed with their breeding and manners. But the splendour was disagreeable. She observed shrewdly, that between persons of rank and their attendants there was a distance which forbad familiarity; if one servant was treated with confidence, the others were jealous; she was herself an object of ill-will through Doña Aloysia's friendship; and she concluded that it was a popular error to speak of 'Lords and Ladies'; for the high friends whom she had made were slaves in a thousand ways. Her chief comfort at Toledo was the Jesuit College, where she studied at leisure the details of monastic rule. Her visit was unexpectedly ended by a letter from her provincial. The feeling in the Incarnation convent had suddenly changed; a party had formed in her favour, who wished to choose her as prioress. The provincial, who disliked her as much as ever, desired Doña Aloysia privately to prevent her from going home; but 'a vision' told her that she had prayed for a cross, and a cross she should have. She concluded that it was to be the threatened promotion, and after a stormy scene with her hostess she went her way.

She was mistaken about the cross. On reaching Avila, she found that she had not been elected, but that the bull had arrived privately from Rome for her new convent. The Pope had placed it under the bishop, as 'the Lord' had foretold, and the bishop had undertaken the charge. The

secret had been profoundly kept; the house was ready, and nothing remained but to take possession of it. It was to be a house of 'Descalzos' (Barefoots), the name by which the reformed Order was in future to be known in opposition to the Relaxed, the Calzados. The sisters were not to be literally 'shoeless'; 'a barefoot,' as Teresa said, 'makes a bad beast of burden.' They were to wear sandals of rope, and, for the rest, they were to be confined to the cloister strictly, to eat no meat, to sleep on straw, to fast on reduced allowance from September till Easter; they were to do needlework for the benefit of the poor, and they were to live on alms without regular endowment. Teresa had been careful for their health; the hardships would not be greater than those borne without complaint by ordinary Spanish peasants. The dress was to be of thick undyed woollen cloth, with no ornament but cleanliness. Dirt, which most saints regarded as a sign of holiness, Teresa always hated. The number of sisters was to be thirteen; more, she thought, could not live together consistently with discipline.

Notwithstanding the Pope's bull, difficulty was anticipated. If the purpose was known, the Carmelites would find means of preventing the dreaded innovation; an accomplished fact, however, would probably be allowed to stand. Teresa selected four poor women as the first to take the habit, and quietly introduced them into the house. She had gone out on leave from her own cloister, as if to attend a sick relative, and was thus unobserved. On August 24, 1562, ten years exactly before the massacre of St. Bartholomew, the sacrament was brought into the tiny chapel of San Josef's, a bell was hung, mass was said, and the new Order had begun to exist.

Teresa was still bound by her vows to her convent. When the ceremony was over, she returned to the Incarna-

tion, half frightened at what she had done. She had stirred a hornets' nest, as she was immediately to find. The devil attacked her first; he told her that she had broken obedience, she had acted without the provincial's leave, and had not asked for it because she knew it would be refused; her nuns would starve; she herself would soon tire of a wretched life in such a wretched place, and would pine for her lost comforts. She lay down to rest, but was soon roused by a storm. The townspeople were the first to discover what had happened. It was easy to foresee the anger of the Carmelites; why the townspeople should have been angry is less obvious. Perhaps they objected to the establishment of a colony of professed beggars among them; perhaps they were led by the chiefs of the other religious Orders. A riot broke out; the prioress sent for Teresa; the provincial arrived, hot and indignant. She was rebuked, admonished, informed that she had given scandal, and required to make instant submission before the assembled convent. The Alcalde meanwhile had called a meeting of the citizens, where the provincials of the Dominicans, Franciscans, and Augustinians attended. A resolution was first passed for the instant dissolution of the new house and the removal of the sacrament; on second thoughts, it was decided to refer the matter, being of such high importance, to the Council of State at Madrid. Teresa had but one friend to go to. 'My Lord,' she said, on her knees, 'this house is not mine, it is yours; all that I could do is done. You must see to it.' She was not to be disappointed.

The bishop prevented immediate violence, and Avila waited for the action of the Council. The Council was in no hurry with an answer. Certain persons wrote to Philip; Philip referred to the Pope, and there were six months of suspense, the four poor sisters living as they

could, and Teresa remaining in disgrace. The town authorities cooled; they said the house might stand if anyone would endow it. Afterwards, finding that they were not likely to be supported from Madrid, they were ready to dispense with endowment. On the arrival of a fresh bull from Pius the Fifth all remains of opposition vanished, except among the Carmelites, and the Carmelites found it prudent to suppress their objections. Public opinion veered round; the foundation was declared to be a work of God, and Teresa to be his special servant, instead of a restless visionary. The provincial gave her leave to remove and take charge of her flock. The luggage which she took with her from the Incarnation was a straw mattress, a patched woollen gown, a whip, and a haircloth shirt; that was all.

Thus furnished, she entered on the five happiest years of her life. Other sisters joined, bringing small dowries with them, and the number of thirteen was soon filled up. Her girls, she says, were angels, perfect especially in the virtue of obedience. She would try them by orders contradictory or absurd; they did their best without a question. One sister was told to plant a rotten cucumber in the garden; she merely asked if it was to be planted upright or lengthways.

The visions were without intermission. She was taken up to heaven and saw her father and mother there. The Virgin gave her a cope, invisible to all eyes but her own, which would protect her from mortal sin. Once at 'hours' she had a very curious experience. She fancied that she was a mirror without frame, without dimensions, with Christ shining in the centre of it, and the mirror itself, she knew not how, was in Christ. He told her that when a soul was in mortal sin the glass was clouded, and though he was present, it could not reflect him. With heretics the glass was broken, and could never be repaired.

Heretics and the growth of them still occupied her, and the more keenly as the civil war grew more envenomed in France. They were too strong, she thought, to be overcome by princes and soldiers. In such a contest the spiritual arm only could prevail. In a trance she saw seven Carmelite monks, of the pristine type, reformed like her own sisterhood, with swords in their hands on a battle-field. Their faces were flushed with fighting. The ground was strewn with the slain, and they were smiting still, and the flying enemy were the hosts of Luther and Calvin. These air-drawn pictures, lately called illusions of Satan, were now regarded as communications direct from heaven. They were too important to be lost. Her superior ordered her to write them down, and the result was the singular autobiography which has hitherto been our guide to her history.

She wrote it unwillingly; for it is evident that, deeply as these communications had affected her, and definitely as her spiritual advisers had at length assured her of their supernatural origin, she was herself still uncertain of their nature. Many of her visions, she was confident, had been the creation of her own brain. If any had come from another source, she did not regard them as of particular importance, or as symptoms of a high state of grace. This is certain, from a passage on the subject in one of her writings. Hysterical nuns often fancied that they had received revelations, and their confessors were too apt to encourage them. She says:—

'Of "revelations" no account should be made; for though some may be authentic, many are certainly false, and it is foolish to look for one truth amidst a hundred lies. It is dangerous also, for "revelations" are apt to stray from the right faith, and the right faith is of immeasurably greater consequence. People fancy that to have "revelations" implies

exceptional holiness. It implies nothing of the kind. Holiness can be arrived at only by acts of virtue and by keeping the commandments. We women are easily led away by our imagination; we have less strength and less knowledge than men have, and cannot keep things in their proper places. Therefore I will not have my sisters read my own books, especially not my autobiography, lest they look for revelations for themselves in fancying that they are imitating me. The best things that I know came to me by obedience, not by revelation. Sisters may have real visions, but they must be taught to make light of them. There is a subtle deceit in these experiences. The devil may lead souls to evil on a spiritual road.'

The priest editor of Teresa's works makes an honest observation on this remarkable acknowledgment. 'I know not how it is,' he says, 'but the revelations received by women seem of consequence to men, and those received by men of consequence to women.' Though he pretends that he did not know how it was, he knew very well, for he goes on: 'It must arise from those accursed sexual inclinations —each sex believes most where it loves most.' He should have drawn one more inference—that young men were the worst possible spiritual advisers for young women.

Teresa was not to be left to enjoy her quiet. A single convent had hitherto sufficed for her ambition; but she had been told that it was to be a star which was to shine over the earth, and at that solitary taper other flames were now to be kindled. The Church of Rome was rallying from its confusion, and was setting its house in order. The clergy were clearing themselves of the scandals which had brought such tremendous consequences on them. The Catholic powers were putting out their strength, and Teresa's energetic spirit would not allow her to rest. The Carmelites themselves now partially recognised her value. The General came to Spain, and visited her at Avila. He reported what he had seen to Philip, and, with Philip's sanction, he sent

her powers to found other houses of Descalzos, forbidding the provincials to interfere with her. The champions whom she had seen on the battlefield in a vision had been *brothers* of her reformed Order. The General empowered her to establish institutions of men as well as women, if she could find recruits who were willing. In other respects she was left to herself, and she was to show what a single woman, with no resources but her own internal force, was able to accomplish. She was now fifty-two, with bad health, which was growing worse by age. The leaders of the Church were awake; princes and statesmen were awake; but the body of the Spanish people was still unstirred. She had to contend with official pedantry, with the narrow pride of bishops, with dislike of change, and the jealousies of rival jurisdictions. As to barefoot monks, it was long before she could find a single man in flesh and blood whom she could tempt to join with her.

Her adventures in the fifteen years of her pilgrimage would fill a long volume. We must content ourselves with fragmentary incidents of her wanderings, a few pictures of persons with whom she came in contact, a few glimpses of Peninsular life in the sixteenth century, and the human features of a remarkable person still traceable behind the paint and tinsel of miracle, with which her biographers have disfigured Teresa de Cepeda.

Her first enterprise was at Medina del Campo, a large town fifty miles from Avila, on the road to Valladolid, and lately the residence of Isabella's Court. A lady of Medina, of small property, had applied for admission into San Josef's, and could not be received for want of room. She purchased a house, at Teresa's suggestion, which could be turned into a second convent. Difficulties were to be anticipated, of the same kind which had been encountered at Avila, and promptitude and secrecy were again necessary.

A house itself was not enough. Medina could not provide the first sisters, and a colony had to be introduced from the parent stock. Teresa set out with two nuns from San Josef's, and four from the Incarnation, of whom two went with sinking hearts. Julian of Avila, the chaplain, was their single male escort and companion. They travelled in a cart, with a picture or two, some candlesticks for the altar—probably of tin, for they were utterly poor—a bell, and the sacrament. To a stranger who met them they must have appeared like a set of strolling mountebanks. In Avila itself they were thought mad, and the bishop had much the same opinion, though he would not interfere. It was hot August weather—the eve of the Feast of the Assumption—and the roads were parched and dusty. On the way they were met by the news that the Augustinians, whose wall adjoined the building which the lady had bought, intended to prevent them from settling there. They went on, nothing daunted, and reached Medina at nightfall. On the road they had been in danger of being arrested as vagrants by the police. Within the gates they were in worse peril; for the next day there was to be a bull-fight, and the bulls were being driven in through the streets. But nothing could stop Teresa. She had resolved to take possession at once, before she could be interrupted, and she went straight to her point. The party arrived at midnight, and never did intending settlers in an American forest look round upon a less promising scene. The court-yard walls were in ruins, the doors were off their hinges, the windows shutterless, the roof fallen in, the single room which would serve for a chapel half open to the air, and littered with dirt and rubbish. The group and the surroundings would have made a subject for Murillo—seven poor women and their priest, with the sacrament, for which they were more alarmed than for themselves, the

desolate wreck of a place, ghastly in the moonlight, to which they had come expecting to find a home. Four hours of night remained, and then daylight would be on them. Teresa's energy was equal to the occasion. Not a thought was wasted on their own accommodation. The sisters were set to clear the dirt from the chapel. In a garret, the one spot that was waterproof, were some tapestries and bed-hangings. These would protect the altar. They had no nails, and at that hour the shops were closed; but they picked as many as they wanted out of the walls. By dawn the altar was furnished, the bell was hung, mass was said, and the convent was an instituted fact.

Sleepless and breakfastless, the unfortunate creatures then looked about them, and their hearts sank at their prospects. They crept disconsolate into their garret, and sat watching the sacrament through a window, lest rude hands might injure it. In the evening a Jesuit father came. Teresa begged him to find lodgings for them till the house could be put in order; but the town was full, and for a week no suitable rooms could be found. Medina, naturally, was excited at the strange invasion, and was not inclined to be hospitable. At length a charitable merchant took compassion. An upper floor was provided, where they could live secluded, with a hall for a chapel. A Señora de Quiroga, a relation perhaps of the Archbishop of Toledo, undertook the repairs of the convent. The citizens relented and gave alms; and in two months the second house of the reformed Descalzos was safely established.

This was in 1567. In the next year a third convent was founded at Malaga, with the help of another sister of the Duke of Medina Celi. From Malaga Teresa was 'sent by the Spirit' to Valladolid, where a young nobleman offered a villa and garden. While she was considering, the

youth died; he had led a wild life, and she was made to know that he was in purgatory, from which he was to be released only when the first mass was said on the ground which he had dedicated. She flew instantly across Spain with her faithful Julian. The villa did not please her; for it was outside the town, near the river, and was reported to be unhealthy. But the gardens were beautiful. Valladolid, stern and sterile in winter, grows in spring bright with flowers and musical with nightingales. Objections melted before the thought of a soul in penal fire. She took possession; the mass was said; and, as the Host was raised, the pardoned benefactor appeared in glory at Julian's side on his way to paradise. Another incident occurred before she left the neighbourhood. Heresy had stolen into Castile: a batch of Lutherans were to be burnt in the great square at Valladolid; and she heard that they meant to die impenitent. That it could be anything but right to burn human beings for errors of belief could not occur to her; but she prayed that the Lord would turn their hearts, and save their souls, and inflict on her as much as she could bear of their purgatorial pains. She supposed that she had been taken at her word—the heretics recanted at the stake —she herself never after knew a day without suffering.

Toledo came next. She was invited thither by her Jesuit friends. She was now famous. On her way she passed through Madrid. Curious people came about her, prying and asking questions. 'What fine streets Madrid has!' was her answer on one such occasion. She would not stay there. Philip wished to see her, but she had already flown. She had two sisters with her to start the colony; of other property she had four ducats, two pictures, two straw pallets, and nothing besides. She had gone in faith, and faith as usual works miracles. Doña Aloysia had not forgiven her desertion, and from that quarter there was no

assistance; but a house was obtained by some means, and the sisters and she, with their possessions, were introduced into it. Of further provision no care had been taken. It was winter, and they had not firewood enough to 'boil a herring.' They were without blankets, and shivered with cold; but they were never more happy, and were almost sorry when fresh recruits came in and brought money and ordinary conveniences.

The recruits were generally of middle rank. 'The Lord' had said that he did not want members of high families; and Teresa's own experience was not calculated to diminish her dislike of such great persons. Ruy Gomez, Prince of Eboli and Duke of Pastraña, was Philip's favourite minister. His wife was the famous Aña de Mendoza, whom history has determined to have been Philip's mistress. I have told the story elsewhere.[1] The single evidence for this piece of scandal is the presumption that kings must have had mistresses of some kind. Antonio Perez says that Philip was jealous of his intimacy with her. It is a pity that people will not remember that jealousy has more meanings than one. Perez was Philip's secretary. The Princess was a proud, intriguing, imperious woman, with whom Philip had many difficulties; and he resented the influence which she was able to use in his cabinet. More absurd story never fastened itself into human annals, none which more signally illustrates the appetite of mankind for garbage. For a short period Teresa was brought in contact with this high lady, and we catch an authentic glimpse of her. She wanted some new excitement, as ladies of rank occasionally do. She proposed to found a nunnery of a distinguished kind. She had heard of the Nun of Avila as one of the wonders of the day, and she sent for her to Pastraña. Teresa had not liked the Princess's letters; but Ruy Gomez was too great a man to

[1] *Vide supra*, pp. 113, 114.

be affronted, and her confessor told her that she must go. A further inducement was a proposal held out to her of a house for monks, also of the reformed rule, for which she had been trying hitherto in vain. The Princess had a young Carmelite about her, a Father Mariano, who was ready to take charge of it.

Teresa was received at Pastraña with all distinction. A *casa* was ready to receive sisters, but she found that the Princess had already chosen a prioress, and that in fact the convent was to be a religious plaything of a fashionable lady. Three months were wasted in discussion; and in the course of them Teresa was questioned about her history. The Princess had heard of her autobiography, and begged to see it. She was not vain of her visions, and consented only when the Princess promised that the book should be read by no one but herself and her husband. To her extreme disgust she found that it became the common talk of the household, a subject of Madrid gossip, and of vulgar impertinence. Doña Aña herself said scornfully that Teresa was but another Magdalen de la Cruz, an hysterical dreamer, who had been condemned by the Inquisition.

Ruy Gomez had more sense than his wife, and better feeling. The obnoxious prioress was withdrawn, and the convent was started on the usual conditions. The Barefoot Friars became a reality under Father Mariano, whom Teresa liked perhaps better than he deserved. As long as Ruy Gomez lived, the Princess did not interfere. Unfortunately he survived only a few months, and nothing would satisfy Doña Aña in her first grief but that she must enter the sisterhood herself. She took the habit, Mariano having provided her with a special dress of rich materials for the occasion. In leaving the world she had left behind her neither her pride nor her self-indulgence. She brought her favourite maid with her. She had a separate suite of

rooms, and the other sisters waited upon her as servants. Teresa had gone back to Toledo.[1] The Princess in her absence quarrelled with the prioress, who had been substituted for the woman whom she had herself chosen; and finally she left the convent, returned to the castle, and stopped the allowance on which the sisters depended.

Teresa, when she heard what had passed, ordered the removal of the establishment to Segovia. Two years later we find her on the road to Salamanca. It was late in autumn, with heavy snow, the roads almost impassable, and herself suffering from cough and fever. This time she had but one companion, a nun older and scarcely less infirm than herself. 'Oh these journeys!' she exclaims. She was sustained only by the recollection of the many convents which the 'Lutherans' had destroyed, and the loss of which she was trying to repair. It was All Saints' Eve when they reached Salamanca. The church bells were tolling dismally for the departed souls. The Jesuits had promised that she should find a habitation ready, but they found it occupied by students, who at first refused to move. The students were with difficulty ejected. It was a great straggling place, full of garrets and passages, all filthily dirty. The two women entered worn and weary, and locked themselves in. The sister was terrified lest some loose youth might be left hidden in a corner. Teresa found a straw loft, where they laid themselves down, but the sister could not rest, and shivered with alarm. Teresa asked her what was the matter. 'I was thinking,' she said, 'what would become of you, dear mother, if I was to die.' 'Pish,' said Teresa, who did not like nonsense, 'it will be time to think of that when it really happens. Let me go to sleep.'

[1] The Princess had sent her back in her own carriage. 'Pretty saint you, to be travelling in such style as that!' said a fool to her as she drove into Toledo. 'Is there no one but this to remind me of my faults?' she said, and she never entered a carriage again.

Two houses were founded at Alva with the help of the Duke and Duchess; and the terrible Ferdinand of Toledo, just returned from the Low Countries, appears here with a gentler aspect. Teresa's 'Life' was his favourite study; he would travel many leagues, he said, only to look upon her. In one of her trances she had seen the Three Persons of the Trinity. They were painted in miniature under her direction, and she made the likenesses exact with her own hand. These pictures had fallen into the Duchess's hands, and the miniature of Christ was worn by the Duke when he went on his expedition into Portugal.

After this Teresa had a rest. In her own town she was now looked on as a saint, and the sisters of the Incarnation were able to have their way at last and to elect her prioress. There she was left quiet for three years. She had much suffering, seemingly from neuralgia, but her spirit was high as ever. Though she could not introduce her reformed rule, she could insist on the proper observance of the rule as it stood. She locked up the locutoria, the parlours where visitors were received, keeping the keys herself, and allowing no one to be admitted without her knowledge. A youth, who was in love with one of the nuns, and was not allowed a sight of her, insisted once on seeing Teresa and remonstrating. Teresa heard his lamentations, and told him then that if he came near the house again she would report him to the King. He found, as he said, 'that there was no jesting with that woman.' One curious anecdote is told of her reign in the Incarnation, which has the merit of being authentic. Spain was the land of chivalry; knights challenged each other to tilt in the lists; enthusiastic saints challenged one another to feats of penance, and some young monks sent a cartel of defiance to Teresa and her convent. Teresa replied for herself and the sisters, touching humorously the weaknesses of each of her own party:—

'Sister Anne of Burgos says that if any knight will pray the Lord to grant her humility, and the prayer is answered, she will give him all the merits which she may hereafter earn.

'Sister Beatrice Juarez says that she will give to any knight, who will pray the Lord to give her grace to hold her tongue till she has considered what she has to say, two years of the merits which she has gained in tending the sick.

'Isabel de la Cruz will give two years' merits to any knight who will induce the Lord to take away her self-will.

. . . . . .

'Teresa de Jésus says that, if any knight will resolve firmly to obey a superior who may be a fool and a glutton, she will give him on the day on which he forms such a resolution half her own merits for that day—or, indeed, the whole of them—for the whole will be very little.'

The best satire of Cervantes is not more dainty.

The sisters of the Incarnation would have re-elected their prioress when the three years were over; but the provincial interfered, and she and her cart were soon again upon the road. She had worse storms waiting for her than any which she had yet encountered.

At Pastraña, besides Mariano, she had become acquainted with another Carmelite, a Father Gratian, who had also become a member of the Descalzos. Gratian was then about thirty, an eloquent preacher, ambitious, passionate, eager to rule and not so eager to obey, and therefore no favourite with his superiors. On Teresa this man was to exert an influence beyond his merits, for his mind was of a lower type than hers. Such importance as he possessed he derived from her regard; and after her death he sank into insignificance. He still tried to assume consequence, but his pretensions were mortified. In a few years he was stripped of his habit and reduced to a secular priest. He wandered about complaining till he was taken by the Moors, and was set to work in a slave-yard at Tunis. Ransomed

at last, he became confessor to the Infanta Isabella in Flanders, and there died. But it was his fate and Teresa's, that before these misfortunes fell upon him he was to play a notable part in connection with her. He had friends in Andalusia, and he persuaded Teresa that she must found a convent at Seville. It was a rash adventure, for her diploma extended only to the Castiles. She set out with six sisters and the inseparable Julian. The weather was hot, the cart was like purgatory, and the roadside posadas, with their windowless garrets at oven heat, were, she said, 'like hell.' 'The beds were as if stuffed with pebbles.' Teresa fell into a fever, and her helpless companions could only pray for her. When they were crossing the Guadalquivir in a pontoon, the rope broke. The ferryman was thrown down and hurt; the boat was swept away by the current. They were rescued by a gentleman who had seen the accident from his terrace. Cordova, when they passed through it, was crowded for a fête. The mob, attracted by their strange appearance, 'came about them like mad bulls.' At Seville, where Gratian professed to have prepared for their reception, they were met by a flat refusal from the archbishop to allow the establishment of an unendowed foundation, and to live on alms only was an essential of their rule. Teresa was forced to submit.

'God,' she wrote, 'has never permitted any foundation of mine to be set on its feet without a world of worry. I had not heard of the objection till I arrived. I was most unwilling to yield, for in a town so rich as Seville alms could have been collected without the least difficulty. I would have gone back upon the spot, but I was penniless, all my money having been spent upon the way. Neither the sisters nor I possessed anything but the clothes on our backs and the veils which we had worn in the cart. But we could not have a mass without the archbishop's leave, and leave he would not give till we consented.'

But sharper consequences were to follow. In overstepping the boundaries of her province, Teresa had rashly committed herself. From the first the great body of the Carmelites had resented her proceedings. Circumstances and the Pope's protection had hitherto shielded her. But Pius the Fifth was gone. Gregory the Thirteenth reigned in his stead, and a chapter-general of the Carmelite Order held at Piacenza in 1575 obtained an injunction from him prohibiting the further extension of the reformed houses. The foundation of the Seville convent was treated as an act of defiance. The General ordered its instant suppression. Teresa's other foundations had been hitherto quasi-independent; Father Jerome Tostado was dispatched from Italy as commissioner to Spain, to reduce them all under the General's authority; and a new nuncio was appointed for the special purpose of giving Tostado his support. If Philip objected, he was to be told that the violation of order had caused a scandal to the whole Church.

Little dreaming of what was before her, Teresa had been nourishing a secret ambition of recovering the entire Carmelite body to their old austerities. The late nuncio had been a hearty friend to her. She had written to the King to ask that Gratian might be appointed visitor-general of her own houses for the whole peninsula. The King had not only consented to this request, but with the nuncio's request, irregular as it must have seemed, Gratian's jurisdiction was extended to all the Carmelite convents in Spain. Philip could not have taken such a step without Teresa's knowledge, or at least without Gratian's; and in this perhaps lies the explanation of the agitations in Italy and of Tostado's mission. Evidently things could not continue as they were. Teresa's reforms had been made in the teeth of the chiefs of the Order, and her houses, so far as can be seen, had been as yet under no organised government at

all. She might legitimately have asked the nuncio to appoint a visitor to these; for it was through the Pope's interference that she had established them; but she was making too bold a venture in grasping at the sovereignty of a vast and powerful foundation, and she very nearly ruined herself. Gratian was refused entrance to the first convent which he attempted to visit. The new briefs arrived from Rome. Teresa received a formal inhibition against founding any more houses. She was ordered to select some one convent and to remain there; while two prioresses whom she had instituted were removed, and superiors in whom Tostado had confidence were put in their places. Teresa's own writings, on which suspicion had hung since they had been read by the Princess, were submitted to the Inquisition. She herself chose Toledo for a residence, and was kept there under arrest for two years. The Inquisitors could find no heresy in her books; and, her pen not being under restriction, she composed while in confinement a history of her foundations as a continuation of her autobiography. Her correspondence besides was voluminous. She wrote letters (the handwriting bold, clear and vigorous as a man's) to princes and prelates, to her suffering sisters, to her friends among the Jesuits and Dominicans.

The sequel is exceedingly curious. There is a belief that the administration of the Roman Church is one and indivisible. In this instance it proved very divisible indeed. The new nuncio and the General of the Carmelites intended to crush Teresa's movement. The King and the Archbishop of Toledo were determined that she should be supported. The Spanish Government were as little inclined as Henry the Eighth to submit to the dictation of Italian priests; and when the nuncio began his operations, Philip at once insisted that he should not act by himself, but should have

four assessors, of whom the Archbishop of Toledo should be one. It was less easy to deal with Tostado. Each religious Order had its own separate organization. Teresa had sworn obedience, and Tostado was her lawful superior. She acted herself as she had taught others to act, and at first refused Philip's help in actively resisting him. The nuncio had described her as 'a restless woman, unsettled, disobedient, contumacious, an inventor of new doctrines under pretence of piety, a breaker of the rule of cloister residence, a despiser of the apostolic precept which forbids a woman to teach.' Restless she had certainly been, and her respect for residence had been chiefly shown in her anxiety to enforce it on others—but disobedient she was not, as she had an opportunity of showing. In making the change in the government of her houses, Tostado had found a difficulty at San Josef's, because it was under the bishop's jurisdiction. The alteration could not be made without her presence at Avila. He sent for her from Toledo. She went at his order, she gave him the necessary assistance, and the house was reclaimed under his authority.

By this time temper was running high on all sides. Tostado was not softened by Teresa's acquiescence. The nuncio was exasperated at the King's interference with him. He regarded Teresa herself as the cause of the schism, and refused to forgive her till it was healed. She was now at Avila. The office of prioress was again vacant at the Incarnation. The persecution had endeared her to the sisters, and a clear majority of them were resolved to re-elect her. Tostado construed their action into defiance; he came in person to hold the election; he informed the sisters, of whom there were now a hundred, that he would excommunicate every one of them who dared to vote for a person of whom he disapproved. The nuns knew that they had

the right with them, for the Council of Trent had decided that the elections were to be free. Fifty-five of them defied Tostado's threats and gave their votes for Teresa. As each sister handed in her paper, Tostado crushed it under his feet, stamped upon it, cursed her, and boxed her ears. The minority chose a prioress who was agreeable to him; he declared this nun duly elected, ordered Teresa into imprisonment again, and left her supporters cut off from mass and confession till they submitted. The brave women would not submit. They refused to obey the superior who had been forced on them, except as Teresa's substitute. The theologians of Avila declared unanimously that the excommunication was invalid. Tostado was only the more peremptory. He flogged two of the confessors of the convent, who had been appointed by the late nuncio, and he sent them away under a guard. 'I wish they were out of the power of these people,' Teresa wrote. 'I would rather see them in the hands of the Moors.'

One violence was followed by another. Father Gratian was next suspended, and withdrew into a hermitage at Pastraña. The nuncio, caring nothing about the assessors, required him to surrender the commission as visitor which he had received from his predecessor. Gratian consulted the Archbishop of Toledo, who told him that he had no more spirit than a fly, and advised him to appeal to Philip. The nuncio, without waiting for an answer, declared Gratian's commission cancelled. He cancelled also Teresa's regulations, and replaced her convents under the old relaxed rule. The Bishop of Avila was of opinion that the nuncio had exceeded his authority and had no right to make such a change. Teresa told Gratian that he would be safe in doing whatever the Bishop advised; and she recommended an appeal to the Pope and the King for a formal division of the Carmelite Order. Tostado had put himself in the

wrong so completely in his treatment of the sisters of the Incarnation, that she overcame her dislike of calling in the secular arm and wrote a detailed account of his actions to Philip. Gratian himself lost his head and was only foolish. One day he wrote to the nuncio and made his submission. The next, he called a chapter of the Descalzos and elected a separate provincial. The nuncio replied by sending Teresa back as a prisoner to Toledo, and Gratian to confinement in a monastery.

But the Spanish temper was now thoroughly roused. Philip and the Archbishop of Toledo had both privately communicated with the Pope on the imprudence of the nuncio's proceedings; and the King on his own account had forbidden the magistrates everywhere to support either Tostado or his agents. The Duke of Infantado, the proudest of the Spanish grandees, insulted the nuncio at Court; and the nuncio, when he appealed to Philip for redress, was told coldly that he had brought the insult upon himself. The Pope, in fact, being better informed, and feeling that he would gain little by irritating the Castilians for the sake of the relaxed Carmelites, had repented of having been misled, and was only eager to repair his mistake. Teresa's apprehensions were relieved by a vision. Christ appeared to her, attended by his mother and San Josef. San Josef and the Virgin prayed to him. Christ said 'that the infernal powers had been in league to ruin the Descalzos; but they had been instituted by himself, and the King in future would be their friend and patron.' The Virgin told Teresa that in twenty days her imprisonment would be over. Not her imprisonment only, but the struggle itself was over. The nuncio and Tostado were recalled to Italy. Spain was to keep her 'barefoot' nuns and friars. We need not follow the details of the arrangement. It is enough to say that the Carmelites were

divided into two bodies, as Teresa had desired. The Descalzos became a new province, and were left free to choose their own officers. We have told the story at so much length, because it illustrates remarkably the internal character of the Spanish Church, and the inability of the Italian organization to resist a national impulse.

All was now well, or would have been well, but for mortal infirmity. Gratian went to Rome to settle legal technicalities. Teresa resumed her wandering life of founding convents. Times were changed since her hard fight for San Josef. Town Councils met her now in procession. Te Deums were sung in the churches, and eager crowds waited for her at the roadside inns. But so far as she herself was concerned, it is a question whether success added to her happiness. So long as an object is unattained, we may clothe it in such ethereal colours as we please; when it is achieved, the ideal has become material; it is as good perhaps as what we ought to have expected, but is not what we did expect. Teresa was now sixty-four years old, with health irrevocably broken. Her houses having assumed a respectable legal character, many of them had after all to be endowed, and she was encumbered with business. 'The Lord,' as she said, continued to help her. When she was opposed in anything, the Lord intimated that he was displeased. If she doubted, he would reply, '*Ego sum*,' and her confessor, if not herself, was satisfied. But she had much to do, and disheartening difficulties to overcome. She had been working with human beings for instruments, and human beings will only walk straight when the master's eye is on them. In the preliminary period the separate sisterhoods had been left very much to themselves. Some had grown lax. Some had been extravagantly ascetic. In San Josef, the first-fruits of her travail, the sisters had mutinied for a meat diet. A fixed

code of laws had to be enforced, and it was received with murmurs, even by friends on whom she had relied.[1] She addressed a circular to them all, which was characteristically graceful:—

'Now then we are all at peace—Calzados and Descalzados. Each of us may serve God in our own way, and none can say us nay. Therefore, my brothers and sisters, as he has heard your prayer, do you obey him with all your hearts. Let it not be said of us as of some Orders, that only the beginnings were creditable. We have begun. Let those who come after us go on from good to better. The devil is always busy looking for means to hurt us; but the struggle will be only for a time; the end will be eternal.'

Three years were spent in organization—years of outward honour, but years of suffering—and then the close came. In the autumn of 1581 Gratian had arranged that a convent was to be opened at Burgos. Teresa was to be present in person, and Gratian accompanied her. They seem to have travelled in the old way—a party of eight in a covered cart. The weather was wretched; the floods were out; the roads mere tracks of mud, the inns like Don Quixote's castle. Teresa was shattered with cough; she could eat nothing; the journey was the worst to which she had been exposed. On arriving at Burgos she was taken to a friend's house; a great fire had been lighted, where she was to dry her clothes. The damp and steam brought on fever, and she was unable to leave her bed.

The business part of her visit had been mismanaged. Gratian had been as careless as at Seville, and the same difficulties repeated themselves. The Council of Trent had

[1] One of the rules referred to prayers for the King, which were to be accompanied by weekly whippings, such as Merlin ordered for the disenchantment of Dulcinea. 'Statutum fuit ut perpetuis temporibus una quotidie Missa, preces item continuæ, et una per singulas hebdomadas corporis flagellatio pro Rege Hispaniæ ejusque familiâ in universis conventibus Carmelitarum utriusque sexus excalceatorum Deo offeratur.'

insisted that all new convents should be endowed. The Archbishop of Burgos stood by the condition, and no endowment had been provided. Teresa was too ill to return to Avila. Month after month passed by. A wet autumn was followed by a wetter winter. Terms were arranged at last with the Archbishop. A building was found which it was thought would answer for the convent, and Teresa removed to it; but it was close to the water-side, and half in ruins. The stars shone and the rain poured through the rents of the roof in the garret where she lay. The river rose. The lower story of the house was flooded. The sisters, who watched day and night by her bed, had to dive into the kitchen for the soaked crusts of bread for their own food and hers. The communication with the town being cut off, they were nearly starved. Friends at last swam across and brought relief. When the river went back, the ground floors were deep in stones and gravel.

Sister Anne of St. Bartholomew, who was herself afterwards canonised, tells the rest of the story. When spring came the weather mended. Teresa was slightly stronger, and, as her own part of the work at Burgos was finished, she was able to move, and was taken to Valladolid. But it was only to find herself in fresh trouble. One of her brothers had left his property to San Josef's. The relations disputed the will, and an angry lawyer forced his way into her room and was rude to her. She was in one of her own houses, where at any rate she might have looked for kindness. But the prioress had gone over to her enemies, shown her little love or reverence, and at least bade her 'go away and never return.'

She went on to Medina. She found the convent in disorder; she was naturally displeased, and found fault. Since the legal establishment of the Descalzos, she had no

formal authority, and perhaps she was too imperious. The prioress answered impertinently, and Teresa was too feeble to contend with her. Twenty years had passed since that gipsy drive from Avila, the ruined courtyard, the extemporised altar, and the moonlight watch of the sacrament. It had ended in this. She was now a broken old woman, and her own children had turned against her. She ate nothing. She lay all night sleepless, and the next morning she left Medina. She had meant to go to Avila, but she was wanted for some reason at Alva, and thither, in spite of her extreme weakness, she was obliged to go. She set out before breakfast with one faithful companion. They travelled all day without food, save a few dried figs. They arrived at night at a small pueblo, all exhausted, and Teresa fainting; they tried to buy an egg or two, but eggs were not to be had at the most extravagant price. Teresa swallowed a fig, but could touch nothing more. She seemed to be dying. Sister Anne knelt sobbing at her side. 'Do not cry,' she said; 'it is the Lord's will.' More dead than alive, she was carried the next day to Alva. She was just conscious, but that was all. She lay quietly breathing, and only seemed uneasy when Sister Anne left her for a moment. After a few hours she laid her head on Sister Anne's breast, sighed lightly, and was gone. It was St. Michael's day, 1582.

Nothing extraordinary was supposed to have happened at the time. A weak worn-out woman had died of sufferings which would have destroyed a stronger frame. That was all. Common mortals die thus every day. They are buried; they are mourned for by those who had cause to love them; they are then forgotten, and the world goes on with its ordinary business. Catholic saints are not left to rest so peacefully, and something has still to be told of the fortunes of Teresa of Avila. But we must first touch for

a moment on aspects of her character which we have passed over in the rapid sketch of her life. It is the more necessary since she has been deified into an idol, and the tenderness, the humour, the truth and simplicity of her human nature, have been lost in her diviner glories. Many volumes of her letters, essays, treatises, memoranda of various kinds, survive in addition to her biography. With the help of these we can fill in the lines.

She was not learned. She read Latin with difficulty, and knew nothing of any other language, except her own. She was a Spaniard to the heart, generous, chivalrous, and brave. In conversation she was quick and bright. Like her father, she was never heard to speak ill of anyone. But she hated lies, hated all manner of insincerity, either in word or action. In youth she had been tried by the usual temptations; her life had been spotless; but those whose conduct has been the purest are most conscious of their smaller faults, and she had the worst opinion of her own merits. The rule which she established for her sisterhoods was severe, but it was not enough for her own necessities. She scourged herself habitually, and she wore a peculiarly painful haircloth; but these were for herself alone, and she did not prescribe them to others. She sent a hair shirt to her brother, but she bade him be careful how he used it. 'Obedience,' she said, 'was better than sacrifice, and health than penance.' One of her greatest difficulties was to check the zeal of young people who wished to make saints of themselves by force. A prioress at Malaga had ordered the sisters to strike one another, with a view to teaching them humility. Teresa said it was a suggestion of the devil. 'The sisters are not slaves,' she wrote; 'mortifications are of no use in themselves; obedience is the first of virtues, but it is not to be abused.' The prioress of Toledo again drew a sharp rebuke upon

herself. She had told a sister who had troubled her with some question to go and walk in the garden. The sister went, and walked and walked. She was missed the next morning at matins. She was still walking. Another prioress gave the Penitential Psalms for a general discipline, and kept the sisters repeating them at irregular hours. 'The poor things ought to have been in bed,' Teresa wrote. 'They do what they are told, but it is all wrong. Mortification is not a thing of obligation.'

Gratian himself had to be lectured. He had been inventing new ceremonies. 'Sister Antonia,' she wrote, 'has brought your orders, and they have scandalized us. Believe me, father, we are well as we are, and want no unnecessary forms. For charity's sake, remember this. Insist on the rules, and let that suffice.' Gratian had given injunctions in detail about dress and food. 'Do as you like,' she said, 'only do not define what our shoes are to be made of. Say simply, we may wear shoes, to avoid scruples. You say our caps are to be of hemp—why not of flax? As to our eating eggs, or eating preserves on our bread, leave it to conscience. Too much precision only does harm.'

Her own undergarments, though scrupulously kept clean, were of horse-cloth. She slept always on a sack of straw. A biscuit or two, an egg, a few peas and beans, made her daily food, varied, perhaps, on feast-days, with an egg and a slice of fish, with grapes or raisins.

Her constant trances were more a trial than a pleasure to her. She writes to her brother: 'Buen anda Nuestro Señor.—I have been in a sad state for this week past. The fits have returned. They come on me sometimes in public and I can neither resist nor hide them. God spare me these exhibitions of myself. I feel half drunk. Pray for me, for such things do me harm. They have nothing to do with religion.'

Nothing can be wiser than her general directions for the management of the sisterhoods. To the sisters themselves she says:—

'Do not be curious about matters which do not concern you. Say no evil of anyone but yourself, and do not listen to any. Never ridicule anyone. Do not contend in words about things of no consequence. Do not exaggerate. Assert nothing as a fact of which you are not sure. Give no hasty opinions. Avoid empty tattle. Do not draw comparisons. Be not singular in food or dress; and be not loud in your laughter. Be gentle to others, and severe to yourself. Speak courteously to servants. Do not note other people's faults. Note your own faults, and their good points. Never boast. Never make excuses. Never do anything when alone which you would not do before others.'

Her greatest difficulty was with the convent confessors. Teresa had a poor opinion of men's capacities for understanding women. 'We women,' she said, 'are not so easily read. Priests may hear our confessions for years and may know nothing about us. Women cannot describe their faults accurately, and the confessor judges by what they tell him.' She had a particular dislike of melancholy women, who fancied that they had fine sensibilities which were not understood or appreciated. She found that confessors became foolishly interested in such women, and confidences came, and spiritual communications of mutual feelings, which were nonsense in themselves and a certain road to mischief. Teresa perhaps remembered some of her own experiences in her excessive alarm on this point. She insisted that the confessor should have no intercourse with any sister, except officially, and in the confessional itself. At the direction of her superiors, she wrote further a paper of general reflections on the visitation of convents, which show the same insight and good sense.

The visitor was the provincial or the provincial's vicar,

and his business was to inspect each convent once a year.

'The visitor,' she said, 'must have no partiality, and, above all, no weakness or sentimentality. A superior must inspire fear. If he allows himself to be treated as an equal, especially by women, his power for good has gone. Once let a woman see that he will pass over her faults out of tenderness, she will become ungovernable. If he is to err, let it be on the side of severity. He visits once only in a twelvemonth, and unless the sisters know that at the end of each they will be called to a sharp reckoning, discipline will be impossible. Prioresses found unfit for office must be removed instantly. They may be saints in their personal conduct, but they may want the qualities essential to a ruler, and the visitor must not hesitate.

'He must look strictly into the accounts. Debt of any kind is fatal. He must see into the work which each sister has done, and how much she has earned by it. This will encourage industry. Each room in the house must be examined, the parlour gratings especially, that no one may enter unobserved. The visitor must be careful too with the chaplains, learn to whom each sister confesses, and what degree of communication exists between them. The prioress, as long as she retains office, must always be supported. There can be no peace without authority, and sisters sometimes think they are wiser than their superiors. No respect must be shown for morbid feelings. The visitor must make such women understand that, if they do wrong, they will be punished, and that he is not to be imposed upon.

'As to the prioress, he must learn first if she has favourites; and he must be careful in this, for it is her duty to consult most with the most discreet of the sisters; but it is the nature of us to overvalue our own selves. When preference is shown, there will be jealousy. The favourite will be supposed to rule the Holy Mother: the rest will think that they have a right to resist. Sisters who may be far from perfect themselves will be ready enough to find fault. They will tell the visitor that the prioress does this and that. He will be perplexed what to think; yet he will do infinite harm if he orders changes which are not needed. His guide must be the Rule of the Order. If he finds that the prioress dispenses with the rule on insufficient grounds,

thinking this a small thing and that a small thing, he may be sure that she is doing no good. She holds office to maintain the rule, not to dispense with it.

'A prioress is obviously unfit who has anything to conceal. The sisters must be made to tell the truth; they will not directly lie perhaps, but they will often keep back what ought to be known.

'Prioresses often overload the sisters with prayers and penances, so as to hurt their health. The sisters are afraid to complain, lest they be thought wanting in devotion; nor ought they to complain except to the visitor. . . . . The visitor, therefore, must be careful about this. Especially let him be on his guard against saintly prioresses. The first and last principle in managing women is to make them feel that they have a head over them who will not be moved by any earthly consideration; that they are to observe their vows, and will be punished if they break them; that his visit is not an annual ceremony, but that he keeps his eye on the daily life of the whole establishment. Women generally are honourable and timid; they will think it wrong sometimes to report the prioress's faults. He will want all his discretion.

'He should enquire about the singing in the choir; it ought not to be loud or ambitious; fine singing disturbs devotion, and the singers will like to be admired. He should notice the dresses too; if he observe any ornament on a sister's dress, he should burn it publicly. This will be a lesson to her. He should make his inspection in the morning, and never stay to dinner, though he be pressed; he comes to do business, not to talk. If he does stay, there must only be a modest entertainment. I know not how to prevent excess in this respect, for our present chief never notices what is put before him—whether it is good or bad, much or little.[1] I doubt whether he even understands.

'Finally the visitor must be careful how he shows by any outward sign that he has a special regard for the prioress. If he does, the sisters will not tell him what she really is. Each of them knows that she is heard but once, while the prioress has as

[1] This was meant as a hint to Gratian, who was much too fond of dining with the sisterhoods. Perhaps much of the rest was also intended for him.

much time as she likes for explanations and excuses. The prioress may not mean to deceive, but self-love blinds us all. I have been myself taken in repeatedly by mother superiors, who were such servants of God that I could not help believing them. After a few days' residence, I have been astonished to find how misled I had been. The devil, having few opportunities of tempting the sisters, attacks the superiors instead. I trust none of them till I have examined with my own eyes.'

Shrewder eyes were not perhaps in Spain. 'You deceived me in saying she was a woman,' wrote one of Teresa's confessors. 'She is a bearded man.'

To return to her story. She died, as has been said, at Alva, and there was nothing at first to distinguish her departure from that of ordinary persons. She had fought a long battle. She had won the victory; but the dust of the conflict was still flying; detraction was still busy; and honour with the best deserving is seldom immediately bestowed. The air has to clear, the passions to cool, and the spoils of the campaign to be gathered, before either the thing accomplished or the doer's merits can be properly recognised. Teresa's work was finished; but she had enemies who hated her; half friends who were envious and jealous; and a world of people besides, to say that the work was nothing very wonderful, and that they could have done as well themselves if they had thought it worth while.

It is always thus when persons of genuine merit first leave the earth. As long as they are alive and active they make their power felt; and when they are looked back upon from a distance they can be seen towering high above their contemporaries. Their contemporaries, however, less easily admit the difference; and when the overmastering presence is first removed, and they no longer feel the weight of it, they deny that any difference exists.

Teresa was buried where she died. Spanish tombs are

usually longitudinal holes perforated in blocks of masonry. The coffin is introduced; the opening is walled up, and a tablet with an inscription indicates and protects the spot. In one of these apertures attached to the Alva convent Teresa was placed. The wooden coffin, hastily nailed together, was covered with quicklime and earth. Massive stones were built in after it, and were faced with solid masonry. There she was left to rest; to be regarded, as it seemed, with passionate affection by the sisters who survived her, and then to fade into a shadow, and be remembered no more for ever. But the love of those sisters was too intense, and their faith too deep. 'Calumny,' says Sir Arthur Helps, 'can make a cloud seem a mountain; can even make a cloud become a mountain.' Love and faith are no less powerful enchanters, and can convert into facts the airy phantoms of the brain. The sisters when they passed her resting-place paused to think of her, and her figure as it came back to them breathed fragrance sweet as violets. Father Gratian, who had been absent from the deathbed, came on a visitation to the convent nine months after. His imagination was as active as that of the sisterhood: he perceived, not the violet odour only, but a fragrant oil oozing between the stones. The tomb was opened, the lid of the coffin was found broken, and the earth had fallen through. The face was discoloured, but the flesh was uncorrupted, and the cause of the odour was at once apparent in the ineffable sweetness which distilled from it. The body was taken out and washed. Gratian cut off the left hand and secured it for himself. Thus mutilated, the body itself was replaced, and Gratian carried off his prize, which instantly worked miracles. The Jesuit Ribera, who was afterwards Teresa's biographer, and had been present at the opening, saved part of the earth. He found it 'sweet as the bone of St. Lawrence which was preserved at Avila.'

The story flew from lip to lip. Gratian, zealous for the honour of the reformed branch of the Carmelites, called a chapter, and brought his evidence before it that their founder was a saint. Teresa's communications with the other world at once assumed a more awful aspect. The chapter decided that, as at Avila she was born, as at Avila she was first admitted to converse with Christ, and as there was her first foundation, to Avila her remains must be removed, and be laid in the chapel of San Josef. The sisters at Alva wept, but submitted. They were allowed to keep the remnant of the arm from which Gratian had taken off the hand. Other small portions were furtively abstracted. The rest was solemnly transferred.

This was in 1585, three years after her death. But it was not to be the end. The Alva family had the deepest reverence for Teresa. The Great Duke was gone, but his son who succeeded him, and his brother, the Prince of St. John's, inherited his feelings. They were absent at the removal, and had not been consulted. When they heard of it, they held their town to have been injured and their personal honour to have been outraged. They were powerful. They appealed to Rome, and were successful. Sixtus the Fifth, in 1586, sent an order to give them back their precious possession, and Teresa, who had been a wanderer so long, was sent again upon her travels. A splendid tomb had been prepared in the convent chapel at Alva, and the body, brought back again from Avila, lay in state in the choir before it was deposited there. The chapel was crowded with spectators: the Duke and Duchess were present with a train of nobles, the Provincial Gratian, and a throng of dignitaries, lay and ecclesiastic. The features were still earth-stained, but were otherwise unaltered. The miraculous perfume was overpowering. Ribera contrived to kiss the sacred foot, and to touch the remaining arm.

He feared to wash his hands afterwards, lest he should wash away the fragrance; but he found, to his delight, that no washing affected it. Gratian took another finger for himself; a nun in an ecstasy bit out a portion of skin; and for this time the obsequies were ended. Yet, again, there was another disentombment, that Teresa might be more magnificently coffined, and the General of the Carmelites came from Italy that he might see her. This time, the Pope had enjoined that there should be no more mutilation; but nothing could restrain the hunger of affection. Illustrious persons who were present, in spite of Pope and decency, required relics, and were not to be denied. The General distributed portions among the Alva sisterhood. The eye-witness who describes the scene was made happy by a single finger-joint. The General himself shocked the feelings or roused the envy of the bystanders by tearing out an entire rib. Then it was over, and all that remained of Teresa was left to the worms.

But the last act had still to be performed. Spanish opinion had declared Teresa to be a saint; the Church had to ratify the verdict. Time had first to elapse for the relics to work miracles in sufficient quantity, and promotion to the highest spiritual rank could only be gradual and deliberate. Teresa was admitted to the lower degree of beatification by Paul the Fifth in 1614. She was canonised (*relata inter Deos*) eight years later by Gregory the Fifteenth, in the company of St. Isidore, Ignatius Loyola, Francis Xavier, and Philip Neri. If a life of singular self-devotion in the cause of Catholic Christianity could merit so lofty a distinction, no one will challenge Teresa's claim to it. She had been an admirable woman, and as such deserved to be remembered. But she was to be made into an object of popular worship, and evidence of mere human excellence was not sufficient. A string of miracles were proved to

have been worked by her in her lifetime, the witnesses to the facts being duly summoned and examined. Her sad, pathetic death-scene was turned into a phantasmagoria. Old people were brought to swear that the Convent Church had been mysteriously illuminated; Christ and a company of angels had stood at the bedside to receive the parting soul; and the room had been full of white floating figures, presumed to be the eleven thousand virgins. Others said that a white dove had flown out of her mouth when she died, and had vanished through the window; while a dead tree in the garden was found next morning covered with white blossom.

The action of the relics had been still more wonderful. If cut or punctured they bled. They had continued uncorrupted. They were still fragrant. A cripple at Avila had been restored to strength by touching a fragment; a sister at Malaga with three cancers on her breast had been perfectly cured—with much more of the same kind.

Next the solemn doctors examined Teresa's character, her virtues of the first degree, her virtues of the second degree, the essentials of *sanctitas in specie*. Faith, Hope, Charity, love of Christ, were found all satisfactory. Her tears at the death of Pius the Fifth proved her loyalty to the Church. The exceptional features followed, her struggles with the cacodæmon, her stainless chastity, her voluntary poverty, her penance, her whip, her haircloth, her obedience, her respect for priests, her daily communion, her endurance of the devil's torments, and, as the crown of the whole, her intercourse with San Josef, the Virgin, and her Son.

Her advocate made a splendid oration to the Pope. The Pope referred judgment to the Cardinals, Archbishops, and Bishops, whose voices were unanimous, and Teresa was declared a member of the already glorified company to whom prayers might lawfully be uttered.

Teresa's image still stands in the Castilian churches. The faithful crowd about her with their offerings, and dream that they leave behind them their aches and pains; but her words were forgotten, and her rules sank again into neglect. The Church of Rome would have done better in keeping alive Teresa's spirit than in converting her into a goddess. Yet the Church of Rome is not peculiarly guilty, and we all do the same thing in our own way. When a great teacher dies who has told us truths which it would be disagreeable to act upon, we write adoring lives of him, we place him in the intellectual pantheon; but we go on as if he had never lived at all. We put up statues to him as if that would do as well, and the prophet who has denounced idols is made an idol himself. Yet good seed scattered broadcast is never wholly wasted. Though dying out in Spain and Italy, the Carmelite Sisterhoods are reviving in Northern Europe, and they owe such life as they now possess to Teresa of Avila. The nuns of Compiègne, who in 1794 fell under the displeasure of Robespierre, were Carmelites of Teresa's order. Vergniaud and his twenty-two companions sang the Marseillaise at the scaffold, the surviving voices keeping up the chorus, as their heads fell one by one till all were gone. Teresa's thirteen sisters at Compiègne sang the 'Veni Creator' as the knife of the Convention made an end of them, the prioress singing the last verse alone amidst the bodies of her murdered flock.

THE TEMPLARS

I

I HAVE chosen, I fear, a somewhat remote subject for these lectures,[1] and the remoteness is not the only objection. I might have gone farther back, and yet been nearer to our modern interests. I might have given you an account, had I known anything about the matter, of the people who lived in the pile-dwellings in the Swiss lakes; or of the old sea-rovers who piled up the kitchen middens on the shores of the Baltic; or I might have gone back to the primæval missing link between us and the apes, the creatures who split the bones which we find in Kent's Cavern, and were the contemporaries of the cave-bears and the big cats who then lived in these islands. In talking about any of these I should have been on a level with modern curiosity. We are all eager to know more about these ancestors of ours, since Darwin has thrown doubts upon our supernatural origin. At any rate, however, I shall not ask you to go so far back with me by a good many thousand years. The military orders of the Middle Ages, if different from ourselves, are but creatures of yesterday in comparison, and there is an interest even of a scientific kind in observing the strangely varied forms which human nature is capable of assuming. Whatever has come out of man lies somewhere in the character of man.

[1] These papers were originally lectures delivered at Edinburgh before the Philosophical Institution in 1885.

Human nature is said to be always the same; but it is the same only in the sense that the crab apple and the endless varieties of garden apples are the same. Analyse the elements and you find them to appearance the same. There is some force in the seed (we cannot tell what) which makes one plant a crab and another a fruit-tree. In the man the difference lies in the convictions which he entertains about his origin, his duties, his responsibilities, his powers. With him, too, there is an original vital force which will make each individual something different from his neighbour; but the generic type is formed by his creed. As his belief, so is his character. According to his views of what life is given him for, he becomes a warrior, a saint, a patriot, a rascal, a sensualist, or a comfortable man of business, who keeps his eye on the main chance, and does not go into dreams. And as you look along the ages you see a tendency in masses of men to drift into one or other of these forms.

Carlyle tells of a conversation at which he was once present in this city more than fifty-six years ago. Some one was talking of the mischief which beliefs had produced in the world. 'Yes,' Carlyle said, 'belief has done much evil; but it has done all the good.' We do not, we cannot certainly know what we are, or where we are going. But if we believe nobly about ourselves, we have a chance of living nobly. If we believe basely, base we shall certainly become.

In a lecture which I had once the honour of addressing you in this place I spoke of the effect of the Reformation on the Scotch character. I described it as like turning iron into steel. There had been steel enough before among the lairds and barons, but the people had been soft metal: they followed their chiefs, going this way and that way as they were told. After Knox's time they had wills of their

own, and we all know what they became. The military Orders about whom I am now to speak grew into a shape at least equally noticeable. Their history is extremely curious. It raises the most intricate questions as to the value of historical evidence. It illustrates both sides of *belief*, the good of it and the evil of it. I speak of Orders, but I shall confine myself to *one*—to the Order of the Templars. There were three great military Orders—the Templars, the Knights Hospitallers, and the Teutonic Knights. Other smaller bodies of the same kind grew up beside them; but it was in the Templars that the idea, if I may call it so, was perfectly realised. To understand them is to understand the whole subject.

Scotch and English people, when they hear of Templars, all think instinctively of Brian de Bois Guilbert. In Sir Brian a Templar stands before us, or seems to stand in flesh and blood, and beside him stands Scott's other Templar, Sir Giles Amaury, the Grand Master, in 'The Talisman.' No one can doubt that we have here real men, as distinct as genius could produce. The Germans say that when a genuine character has been brought into being, it matters nothing whether such a figure ever existed in space and time. The creative spirit has brought him forth somehow, and he belongs thenceforward to the category of real existences. *Men*, doubtless, Sir Brian and Sir Giles both *were*; but Scott, like Homer, sometimes slept. They were *men*, but in one important respect, at least, they were not Templars. Rebecca calls Sir Brian a perjured priest. Sir Giles Amaury hears Conrad's confession before he gives him absolution with his dagger. The Templars were not priests; they were laymen as much as kings and barons. They bound themselves by the three monastic vows of poverty, chastity, and obedience. They were, as a religious order, subject to the Pope, and soldiers

of the Church. Other orders they had none. They had chaplains affiliated, who said mass for them and absolved them. But these chaplains were separate and subordinate. They could hold no rank in the society. Grand masters, preceptors, priors, were always lay. They were a new thing in Christendom, as St. Bernard said. The business of priests was to pray. The business of the knights was to pray, too, but only as all other men prayed. Their peculiar work was to fight. Sir Walter was an Episcopalian, but owing, perhaps, to his North British training, he never completely apprehended the great mystery of apostolical succession. To him a monk was a priest. We in this generation, who have learnt the awful nature of the difference, must clear our minds of that error, at any rate.

Now for what the Templars were.

A good many of us have probably been in the Temple Church in London. The Templars were famous for the beauty of their churches, and this particular church, now that the old pews have been cleared out, is almost in the condition in which they left it. In the ante-chapel there lie on the floor the figures of nine warriors, represented, not as dead or asleep, but reclining as they might have reclined in life, modelled all of them with the highest contemporary art, figures that have only to rise to their feet to stand before us as they actually were when quick and breathing on earth. The originals of them, if they are rightly named, were not themselves Templars; they were great Barons and Statesmen. But they were associates of the Order, and in dress and appearance doubtless closely resembled them. They are extremely noble figures. Pride is in every line of their features, pride in every undulation of their forms; but it is not base, personal pride. There is the spirit in them of the soldier, the spirit of the saint, the spirit of the feudal ruler, and the spirit of the Catholic

Church—as if in them was combined the entire genius of the age, the pride of feudalism and the pride of the Church, the pride of a soul disdainful of all personal ease or personal ambition.

That they were placed where they are, and that they were allowed to remain there, is at least some indication that the charges on which the Templars were condemned found no belief in England. The monuments of the Pembrokes would never have been allowed to remain in a scene which had been desecrated by unimaginable infamies. What the charges were, and how the Order fell, it will be my business to tell you. I have no cause to defend, or sympathy to tempt me to make out a case one way or the other. The Templars in Europe, if they had been allowed to survive, would have become the Pope's Janissaries, and so far as I have any special leaning in those mediæval quarrels, it is towards the Civil Powers and not towards the Church. I believe that it would have been worse for Europe, and not better, if the Popes had been able to maintain their pretensions. If it had really been made out that there was as much vice in the Templars' houses as there undoubtedly was among the other celibate Orders, there would have been nothing in it to surprise me, and it would have interfered with no theory of mine. So now I will go on with the story.

The Templars grew out of the Crusades—that supreme folly of the Middle Ages, as it is the fashion now to call them. For myself, I no more call the Crusades folly than I call the eruption of a volcano folly, or the French Revolution folly, or any other bursting up of the lava which lies in nature or in the hearts of mankind. It is the way in which nature is pleased to shape the crust of the earth and to shape human society. Our business with these things is to understand them, not to sit in judgment on them.

In the eleventh century a great wave of religious enthusiasm passed over Christendom. Men had expected that the world would end at the year 1000. When it did not end, and went on as before, instead of growing careless, they grew more devout. The Popes, under the influence of this pious emotion, acquired a universal and practical authority, such as had never before been conceded to them. Religion became the ruling principle of life to an extent which has never perhaps been equalled, save in Protestant countries in the century which succeeded the Reformation. There was then one faith in western Christendom, one Church, and one Pope. The creed, if you please, was alloyed with superstition, but the power of it, so long as the superstition was sincere, was not less on that account, but was greater; and Christendom became capable of a united action which had not before been possible. In times when religion is alive Christianity is not a history, but a personal experience. Christ himself was supposed to be visibly present on the altar of every church and chapel. His mother, the apostles, and the saints were actively at work round the daily life of every one. The particular part of the earth where the Saviour had been born and had lived, where the mystery of human redemption had been wrought out, where occurred all the incidents which form the subject of the Gospel story, Nazareth and Capernaum, Bethlehem and Jerusalem, acquired a passionate interest in proportion to the depth of the belief.

People didn't travel in those days for amusement. There was no Mr. Cook to lead them in flocks over the globe, or Murray's Handbooks, or omnibuses making the round of the Pyramids, but they travelled a great deal for their own purposes; they travelled to scenes of martyrdom and to shrines of saints; they travelled for the good of their souls. We go ourselves to Stratford-on-Avon, or to

Ferney, or to Abbotsford; some of us go already to Ecclefechan and Craigenputtock, and the stream in that direction will by-and-by be a large one. Multiply the feeling which sends us to these spots a thousandfold, and you may then conceive the attractions which the Holy Places in Palestine had for Catholic Christians in the eleventh century. Christ was all which gave the world and their own lives in it any real significance. It was not a ridiculous feeling on their part, but a very beautiful one. Some philosopher after reading the Iliad is said to have asked, 'But what does it prove?' A good many people have asked of what *use* pilgrimages were. It depends on whether we have got souls or not. If we have none, the Iliad is a jumble of nonsense, and the pilgrim's cockle-shell was no better than a fool's cap and bells. But the prevailing opinion for the present is, that we have souls.

From the beginning there had been pilgrimages to the Holy Places. Even after the Saracens had conquered Palestine the caliphs had so far respected Christian piety as to leave the Holy Sepulchre undesecrated and allow pilgrims to go and come unmolested. But the caliphs' empire was now disturbed by the wild tribes from the north behind the Caspian Sea, who had poured down into Syria. New and fiercer bands of Mahometans had possession of Palestine, and just when Europe was under the influence of the most powerful religious emotion, and had become able to combine to give effect to it, the Seljuks, Turcomans, miscellaneous Arabian robbers, became masters of the one spot on earth which was most sacred in the eyes of the western nations, and the pilgrims had no longer access to it.

With a single impulse Christian Europe rose. They rushed blindly at their object, without preparation, without provision, half of them without arms, trusting that as they

were on God's service God would provide. Famine, disease, the sword swept them away in multitudes, and multitudes more followed, to die like the rest. The Crusades altogether are supposed to have cost six million lives, some say ten, but the end was for a time attained. In the last decade of the eleventh century Godfrey of Bouillon fought his way into Palestine with sixty thousand princes, peers, knights, and their own personal followers. He took Jerusalem. He made a Latin kingdom of it. For eighty-seven years the Holy City was ruled by a Christian sovereign; Palestine was distributed into fiefs, to be held by knights serving under the King of Jerusalem; and Christian Europe believed that it had done its duty. Alas! it had but half done it. The object was to open the Holy Places again to western piety. Jerusalem might be Christian, but the country between Jerusalem and the sea swarmed with bands of roving Bedouins. The pilgrims came loaded with offerings, and fell as a rich prey to robbers at every turn of the road. The crusading knights in their iron coats could meet armies in the field and take towns which could not run away; they could build castles and portion out the districts, and try to rule on the European system; but Europe was not Asia, and they could as little brush away the Saracen banditti as they could brush away the mosquitoes. So it went on year after year, and Jerusalem was hardly more accessible to pious devotees than it had been before the conquest.

At last in the very spirit and genius of the age, a small company of young French nobles volunteered their services as a pilgrim's guard. It was a time when all great work was done by volunteers. There was already a hospital volunteer service like our own modern Red Cross. The Crusaders had suffered miserably from wounds and sickness. A company of Hospitallers had been established

with its head-quarters at Jerusalem, who grew afterwards into the Knights of St. John.

Exactly on the same principle there was formed a fighting company, who undertook to keep the road between Acre and Jerusalem. The originators of it were two young French knights of noble birth, Hugh de Payens and Godfrey of St. Omer. They found seven others ready to join them, all like themselves of high rank, who had won their spurs in the battle-field. They called themselves poor brothers in Christ. They devoted themselves to Christ's service and his mother's. They took vows in the presence of the Patriarch, vows of the usual kind, to cut themselves off from all worldly interests; the vow of poverty, the vow of chastity, the vow of absolute obedience to the Patriarch, and to the one among them whom they should choose as their head. Thus organized, they took the field as mounted police on the pilgrims' road.

The palace of the Latin kings was on the site of Solomon's Temple. A wing of it was set apart as a pilgrims' home, and as the home and station of their guards. The knights had their suite of rooms, with appointments for their horses and servants, and it was from this that they took their name as Brothers of the Order of the Temple. The Church of the Holy Sepulchre was their chapel. They had a Gothic hall with lances in rack, and suits of armour hanging on the walls, and long swords, and crossbows, and battleaxes—very strange objects in the Temple of Jerusalem, almost as strange as the imaginary Gothic castle in the mountains above Sparta to which Faust and Mephistopheles transported Helen of Troy.

It was here and thus that the Knight-Templars, who were so soon to fill so large a place in the world, began their existence—nine young gentlemen whose sole object in

life was to escort pious souls to the scene of Christ's sufferings and resurrection. So much belief was able to do. Their life was spent in fighting. They had a battle-cry by which to know each other—*Beaucéant*, as we know from 'Ivanhoe'; but what Beaucéant meant, no one can tell with certainty. It was, I believe, a cry of the Burgundian peasantry—a sort of link with the old home.

Every prince and baron had his armorial bearings. The Templars had theirs, though again we are astray for a meaning. It was two knights riding on one horse, and has been supposed to indicate their original poverty. But two knights on a single horse would have made but poor work with the light-armed and lightly mounted Bedouins; and we know, besides, that each knight had two or three horses with servants to wait on him and them. Some think it meant brotherly love; some that it was a badge of humility and simplicity. But this is guesswork; the Templars were not clerks, and have left no explanatory records behind them; when they perished, they perished entirely, and scarcely any documents of their own survive to gratify our curiosity. Anyway, it is clear that, though individually vowed to poverty, they were supplied either by the King or out of their own combined resources with everything that was necessary to make their work effective. The only fault among them was that they were too few for the business which they had undertaken.

But enthusiasm was contagious in those days. These Brothers of the Temple made a noise in Europe; the world talked about them. Popes and bishops sang their praises. Other earnest youths were eager to join. The Order was like a seed thrown into a soil exactly prepared for it. So far there were but nine knights held together by their own wills and their own vows. It was desirable to give them more cohesion and an enduring form. One

of the nine was a kinsman of St. Bernard of Clairvaux. At the end of nine years, in 1127, there was to be a great Church Council held at Troyes. Baldwin, King of Jerusalem, sent two of the brethren to Europe to see St. Bernard, to see if possible Pope Honorius, to give an account to the Council of themselves and their doings, and to learn if it would be possible to enlarge their numbers. Evidently King Baldwin thought that if he was to hold Palestine he must have a military force of some kind for constant service. The Crusades were single efforts, exhausting and expensive. The Christian nobles came at their own cost; they fought gallantly, but if they were not killed they went home after their first campaign. The Holy Land could not be held thus. An organized army, with paid troops, and regimental chests, and a commissariat, was out of harmony with the time. If the enthusiasm of Europe was to take a constant form, it could take effect best in a religious military order, to be sustained in perpetuity as a permanent garrison.

St. Bernard received his visitors with open arms. He carried them to the Pope. The Pope gave them his blessing and sent them on to the Council. The Council gave them a Charter, as we may call it, and formed them into an Order of regulars; and at once, from all parts of Europe, hundreds of gallant young men came forward to enter the ranks. The Pope had promised heaven to all who would take the Cross against the infidels. Service in person could be commuted in favour of anyone who would give lands to support the Knights of the Holy Brotherhood. The kings took up the cause. Hugh de Payens came back in person; he was received in Paris; he was received in London by our first Henry. Rich manors were settled on the Order in France, in England, in Spain, and in Germany. Priories were founded on each estate, to be as

depôts to a regiment, where novices could be received and learn their duties, and from which they could be passed on to the Holy Land as their services were required. The huge torrent of crusading enthusiasm was, as it were, confined between banks and made to run in an even channel.

A regular Order required a rule, and St. Bernard drew up a rule for the Knights of the Temple. There was now, he said, to be a war the like of which had never been seen before; a double war against the whole powers of the devil in the field of battle and in the heart of man. The rule of the Templars had, of course, to be something different from the rules of the Benedictines and Cistercians. They were not humble men of peace, meek recluses whose time was divided between cloister and garden, whose chief duty was to sing masses for the souls of erring mankind. They were soldiers to whom peace was never known, who were to be for ever in the field on desperate and dangerous errands. They were men of fiery temper, hot of blood, and hard of hand, whose sinew had to be maintained in as much efficiency as their spirits. They were all nobly born, too; younger sons of dukes, and counts, and barons. Very curious to look at, for we can see in them what noble blood meant at the time when the aristocracy rose to the command of Europe.

If you please, therefore, we will look at this rule of theirs. It has not come down to us precisely as St. Bernard drew it up. It received additions and alterations as the Order enlarged. In essentials, however, the regulations remained unchanged as they had been at the beginning. St. Bernard was a Cistercian. He followed as far as he could his own pattern. The Templars were to be purely self-governed. The head was called the Grand Master. They chose him themselves, and he was to reside always at the post of danger, in Palestine. Under

him were Preceptors—four or five in each of the great nations of Europe. Under them were Priors, the superiors of the different convents of the Order. All these officers were knights, and all laymen. The knights, as I said, took the three monastic vows. They abjured all personal property; they swore to remain pure; they swore to obey the orders of their superiors without question, without hesitation, as if it came from God. We need not think this servile. Even in our own days of liberty such obedience is no more than is required of every officer and private in a modern army. Except in battle, their dress was a white cloak, on which a red cross was afterwards embroidered; white signifying chastity. Unless a knight remained chaste he could not see God. He had no lady-love in whose honour he could break a lance in the tournament, he had not even an imaginary Dulcinea, like Don Quixote, or a Gloriana, like the Paladins of King Arthur's court. The only woman to whom a Templar might devote himself was the Queen of Heaven. They were allowed no ornaments; hair and dress were to be kept plain and simple. Abundant food was provided for them, meat and wine and bread and vegetables. And there is a very curious provision that they were to eat in pairs, each pair at a single board, that one knight might keep watch over the other, and see that he ate his dinner properly, and did not fast. To fast it seems was a temptation, to eat and drink a penance.

Besides the general servants of the house, each knight had a special attendant of his own. The knight was forbidden to speak sharply to him, and was specially forbidden to strike him.

Religious duties were strictly prescribed, but were modified by good sense. The knights, as a rule, were to attend the regular chapel services; but if they had been out on duty at night they were let off matins, and might

say their prayers in bed. If they had done anything wrong or foolish they were to confess to the Grand Master or head of the house; if it was a breach of discipline the head of the house set them a penance; if it was a sin they were sent to a priest, who at first was a secular outside the Order. They had little leisure; their chief occupation was war. When not in the field they had their arms and horses to look after, which they were allowed to buy for themselves, charging the account to the house.

Except by leave of the superior, they were to hold no correspondence with anyone in the outer world, not even with mothers, sisters, or brothers. No brother of the Order might walk about alone, or, when in a town, go into the streets, unless with leave asked and given. Fighting men had hot blood, and hot blood required to be restrained. Even an angry word spoken by one to another was instantly punished, and so was all light talk, especially when it turned on the other sex. If a brother of the Temple wanted to converse it must be on serious or, at least, rational subjects. The most innocent amusements were considered trifling, and were not to be encouraged. A Templar was not to hunt, or hawk, or shoot, still less to play idle games. One exception only was made: it is a very noticeable one, and had not escaped Sir Walter. In Syria and Palestine there were still wild beasts, as there had been in David's time. St. Bernard could not permit his Templars to hunt deer or net partridges; he did, however, by special statute, allow them to hunt lions. And, mind, those were not days of repeating rifles and explosive bullets: it was man and lion face to face, with spear and knife against teeth and claws. The lion no doubt in St. Bernard's mind was a type of the adversary; to hunt the lion was to hunt Satan. None the less, just as he had taken care that they should eat and drink enough, and not emaciate themselves like

intending saints, so he would have them men at all points, and give them sport, too, so long as it was dangerous, and needed courage.

We have travelled far since those days. The taste for sport still survives among us, and along with it at bottom there is, I dare say, in our young aristocrats as firm a temper and as high a spirit as in those young pupils of the Abbot of Clairvaux, were there any modern abbots who could give their lives a meaning and a purpose suited to our own times. I heard the other day of a very fine young fellow, who in the twelfth century might have been spearing lions and escorting pilgrims among the Templars, performing the extraordinary exploit of shooting fifty brace of grouse in twenty-five minutes on some moor in Yorkshire; and the feat was considered so memorable that a granite column was erected on the spot to commemorate it. Some modern St. Bernard seems to me to be desperately needed.

I will mention one more point in the rule of the Templars. It was customary in those days when men of rank were taken in battle to hold them to ransom, the price of redemption being measured by their wealth. The Templars had no personal wealth; and the wealth of the Order was to be spent in God's service, not in man's. If a Templar was taken by the Saracens no ransom was to be paid for him; he was to be left to his fate. His fate invariably was to be offered the alternative of the Koran or the sword; and there is scarcely a recorded instance in which a Templar saved his life by abandoning his faith.

I have said enough about these rules to show what sort of people the Templars were at the time when they began their career as a regular Order. Their numbers increased with extraordinary rapidity. A special branch was established in Aragon, where they could fight the Moors without leaving Europe. Hugh de Payens took three hundred

knights back with him to Palestine, and if they wanted fighting he gave them enough of it. In every battle the Templars were in the front. Five years after nearly every one of the three hundred had been killed. Popes and bishops glorified them as martyrs, and the ranks filled faster than death could empty them. They were the passion and the admiration of the whole Christian world.

II

As time went on, and the first enthusiasm passed away, the Templars became a political and spiritual force in the European system. The Grand Master took rank among the peers in the councils of princes, and in ordinary times he had the command of the military defence of Palestine. The kingdom of Jerusalem was never the stablest of monarchies; but even the Saracens were sometimes exhausted. There were intervals of truce, intervals of peace; negotiations and treaties had to pass between the Christian and the Moslem powers. The conduct of these negotiations fell to the Templars, and between them and the Saracens there grew up some kind of acquaintance. Having their home in the East they got to know the Eastern character. It was alleged afterwards that in this way their faith became corrupted. Scott has taken this view in his character of Sir Brian. Whether it was so or not I shall consider by-and-by. Nothing to their discredit can be concluded from the fact of the intercourse, because it was inevitable. Nor was any suspicion of the kind ever breathed till the eve of their fall. All that appears for certain is that, being soldiers, they became statesmen also, and the general experience is that soldiers make very good statesmen. Only

this is to be observed, that they became more closely connected with the Popes, and the Popes with them. For the first thirty years they were subject to the Patriarchs of Jerusalem, while secular priests, under the patriarchs' authority, heard their confessions and said mass for them. As a reward for their services the Popes relieved them from the patriarchs' jurisdiction, and took them specially to themselves. In their houses and on their domains in Europe they were exempted from all authority except that of Rome. No bishop anywhere was allowed to interfere with them. Instead of secular priests they were permitted to have special chaplains, ordained by bishops, but subject, after their introduction, to the rule of the Temple only. They were entirely isolated from all the other regulars. No brother of the Temple might leave it and become a Benedictine; and the more separate they became the ampler the privileges which the Popes seemed delighted to heap upon them. Many thousands of them by this time were spread over France, and England, and Spain. Their lands were released from tithe; no priest or bishop's officer could levy tax or rate on a Templar's manor, while the Templars on their side might take the tithe which the priests looked on as their own. No prelate, no prince even, might put a Templar on his oath, or call on him for any feudal service. Popular as they had been at the beginning, the extraordinary favour with which the Popes honoured them began to be looked on with jealousy and resentment. And they had another privilege, peculiarly irritating to the bishops, and even to the Benedictines and Cistercians, who thought that if conferred on one Order it should have been conferred on all. Those who are acquainted with the state of Europe in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries know generally what an interdict meant. When any country or province was under an interdict the churches were closed, the

church services were suspended; the young could not get married, the sick could not be absolved, the dead could not be buried in consecrated ground, but lay in ditches like dogs; human life stood suspended as if under a horrible curse. You may think so frightful a sentence was only issued on extraordinary occasions. On the contrary, it was the bishops' universal weapon, the instrument of their power, the unfailing fountain of their revenue, for an interdict once issued was not easily raised till every person in the province had bled for it. When bishops and nobles quarrelled, when archbishops quarrelled with bishops, or quarrelled with their flocks, they launched their interdicts like thunderbolts, striking whole districts without discrimination. To the astonishment and rage of these great persons the manors of the Templars were made a land of Goshen, which the plague could not touch. Nor was this all. Wherever any Templar went on business of the order the interdict was suspended, the church bells rang out, the sacraments were dispensed to the flocks, the bodies of the dead could be laid peacefully in hallowed graves. It was even believed, so bitter was the animosity, that individuals who were excommunicated were allowed to confess and receive absolution in the Templars' chapels.

Thus protected, thus curtained round with exemptions and securities, it is not to be wondered at that if the rival clergy looked askance at the Templars, they came to think considerably of themselves. They were dangerous from their military strength; they owed allegiance to no earthly power, secular or spiritual, except the Pope's. To the Popes they owed their position, and in those long conflicts between the See of Rome and the kings and emperors, they repaid the Papacy by standing by it in all its quarrels. Princes feared them, bishops hated them for their independence, the clergy envied their liberties. They cared little; they

were rich, they were strong; their persons were sacred. Being regarded so doubtfully, it is very remarkable that for the two centuries during which they were in their vigour, and down to the moment of their fall, you rarely find anywhere in the contemporary monastic writers any moral scandals reported of them. Giraldus Cambrensis and others are never weary of drawing pictures of the gluttony and sensuality in the monasteries. Abbots and priors, if you can believe what is told by chroniclers and satirists, were wrapped often in the seven deadly sins, and bishops were not much better. But there is a curious silence about the Templars. They are credited invariably with desperate courage in the field. They are hardly ever, that I remember, accused of being false to their vows, and, undoubtedly, if there had been notorious ground for scandal we should have heard enough of it. For we do hear complaints of them of another kind, complaints of them as laymen encroaching on churchmen's functions, and of their overbearing ways. Now and then they were rebuked, even by the popes, for overstraining their privileges. Very generally, indeed, you find remarks upon their haughty bearing. They had the double loftiness in them of churchmen and warriors, loftiness too great when single, when double past endurance. You see it in all their actions, you see it in the lines of those recumbent figures in the Temple Church, lines fashioned by the habitual tone of their thoughts, and perpetuated in stone by the artist who had seen and known them.

King Richard (our Cœur de Lion) being sick once was attended by a French priest. The father spoke to him especially of three questionable daughters that he had, called Avarice, Sensuality, and Pride. Richard said, 'I have disposed of those three you speak of. I have given my avarice to the Cistercians; I have given my sensu-

ality——' (It is a well-known story, but the authors differ on the recipient of this quality. Some say to the Black Friars, some to the bishops, some to the clergy. I fear the variety implies that it fitted with each of them); but all agree on the last, that he gave his pride to the Templars.

Proud they were, but with the pride of soldiers. Always on the testimony of their worst enemies, wherever there was fighting to be done with the infidel the Templars were in the thickest of it. No man ever knew a Templar a coward. Again and again in Palestine, when their ranks were thin and the Saracens hemmed them round in thousands, the Templars stood till the last man of them fell on the field, or fell afterwards for his faith if carried off a wounded prisoner. Such fighting was rarely or never seen among the bravest men that ever lived.

In 1187, when Saladin destroyed the Christian army near the Lake of Gennesareth, and when the wood of the true cross which they had with them fell into Saladin's hands, the Grand Master of the day and a number of knights were taken prisoners. Saladin admired their daring. He would have made them princes of his own empire if they would have changed their creed; they all refused, and were all slain.

Yet the kings did not like them: they were always too true to the popes. The Templars were a thorn in the side of Cœur de Lion. They were a thorn in the side of the great Frederic the Second of Germany. I need not go through the details of their history. The kingdom of Jerusalem lasted but eighty-seven years; Saladin then took the Holy City, and the Templars built themselves a great feudal castle near Acre, where they continued to protect the pilgrims. Pilgrims' Castle was the name of it—a palatial fortress like old Windsor, vast, stern, and splendid. Here henceforth were the headquarters

of the order. Here the Grand Master held his chapters and ruled as a sovereign; hither came the fresh draughts of knights from the European preceptories. Rich as they were, the austere severity of their habits never seems to have been relaxed. Their wealth was all expended upon the wars; they were powerful, but they stood apart from all other men, loved by few and feared by all. They had no personal ties: they had no national ties: their nation was the Catholic Church: their chief was the Holy Father, and his enemies were theirs. They were in France, in England, in Scotland, in Spain, but they were not French, or English, or Scots, or Spaniards. They rarely mixed in any national struggles, and only when the pope's interests were concerned—as, for instance, when they supported the legate, Pandulf, against King John. From the nature of the case, therefore, they could take no root in the national life anywhere. They were maintained only by the surviving enthusiasm for the Crusades, and the unquestioned constancy with which they upheld the Cross against the Crescent. Yet even in Palestine they were watched with jealousy. They knew the country. From long experience they knew the Arab nature; and they had become prudent. If left to themselves, they would have made peace with the Soldans; they could have secured the neutralisation of Jerusalem, and a peaceful access to it for the pilgrims. But when they advised anything of this kind they were accused of treacherous correspondence with the enemy, and had to wipe the charge out by fresh acts of desperate gallantry. They would have saved the army of St. Louis in Egypt in the last fatal Crusade, but their advice was not taken. They were suspected of bad faith. Sir William of Sonnac, the Grand Master, when he could not be listened to in the council of war (one of his eyes had been dashed out in battle the day before, and the socket

was still bleeding), cried out: 'Beaucéant to the front! The army is lost. Beaucéant and death!' He and all his comrades fell sword in hand.

Surely those Templars were an extraordinary form of human beings. Loved they could not be; they were anomalous, suited only to an anomalous state of things, yet someway admirable too; for, whatever else they were, they could never have entered such an institution for their own pleasure. Dangers were gathering about them towards the end of the thirteenth century. Their lands were sometimes plundered, and the law was slow to help them. Bishops, in spite of Rome and its orders, now and then excommunicated individual Templars, and a pope had to issue another angry bull to protect them. Kings began to think that they were too rich and to covet some of their treasures. Our Henry the Third told the Grand Preceptor of England that they had been indulged too much, and that he must have money out of them. The Templars answered coldly that the King spoke as one that was not wise, and that the attempt might cost him his throne. It was their own existence that was in peril, not the crown's, if they had known the truth of their position.

The meaning of them was as a garrison for Palestine. Their strength was the service which they were rendering in the cause of the Crusades; and the Crusades and all that they had accomplished were now coming to an end.

The campaign of St. Louis in Egypt was the last serious effort. After the defeat of St. Louis on the Nile, the Crusading spirit died away. The fortresses which the Christians held in the Holy Land fell one by one, and at last, after two hundred years of fighting, nothing was left of their conquests except the town of Acre and the country for a few miles round. The management of the defence rested on the Templars. The European princes had pro-

fessed to maintain a garrison in Acre independent of them, but in 1289 the Templars had to report that the garrison were a mere company of vagabonds, ill fed and unpaid, and a universal nuisance. There had been a peace of several years with the Saracens, but the Acre soldiers plundered the country indiscriminately. The Saracens could get no redress. They declared war again, and this time they meant to rally all their strength and drive the Christians finally out. They came down on Acre with 150,000 men. The Grand Master took the command of the miserable troops there, but against such a force he could do nothing. Pilgrims' Castle was evacuated and destroyed; Acre was taken by storm: out of his own five hundred Templars only ten escaped: the garrison was destroyed, and the Holy Land from one end to the other was once more in the hands of the successors of Mahomet. The ten surviving Templars, with a few of the Hospitallers, escaped to Cyprus, which our Richard had taken one hundred years before. They chose a new Grand Master, Jacques de Molay, who was to prove their last. They refilled their ranks; they had saved their treasury, and they renewed the war in Syria. But it was the feeble flicker of a dying flame. The mission of the Templars in the East was over. They held their vast estates for a purpose which was no longer a reality, and it became a question what was to be done with them.

In Europe they were still strong and formidable, and to one of the great parties into which Europe was divided they could still be extremely serviceable. The popes and the great powers of Europe had not yet settled their long differences. The successor of St. Peter still pretended to wield both the swords of the Apostle. Boniface the Eighth was as firm a champion of the pretensions of the Roman See to universal sovereignty as the boldest of his predecessors. As the military orders were no longer required in Palestine,

Boniface perhaps conceived that they could be employed no better than as soldiers of the Church at home. He proposed, as Innocent the Third had proposed before, to unite the three military orders—Templars, Hospitallers, and the Teutonic Knights—into a single body. Could he succeed, he might then keep them in his own hand, to bring princes to order, who, like Frederic the Second of Germany, were not afraid of excommunication.

It was a daring scheme, and worthy of the head which designed it. If carried out, it might have changed the face of Europe. The smaller orders must have been absorbed in the stronger, and the new organisation would have been simply the Templars enlarged. The Holy See could count with certainty on their allegiance. Like the Jesuits, they had renounced all natural ties; they had no nation but the Church, and, like the Jesuits also, they had been trained in habits of unquestioning obedience. Their exceptional privileges were a retaining fee. They could keep these privileges only by the Pope's favour and in virtue of the fear which the Pope still inspired in the bishops and clergy of the National Churches. No temptation could be offered which could induce them to waver in their dependence, and it is quite possible that if the popes could have secured to themselves the service of so strong an arm the theocratic despotism of the Gregories and the Innocents might have been fixed for some centuries longer on the kingdoms of Western Christendom.

Whether such a despotism would have been good for mankind is another question. If the popes were infallibly wise, or infallibly good, or if they were wiser and better than the civil authorities; if, under their rule, with the Templars to help them, the poor man would have found more justice and the wrongdoer have been made to smart more surely for his sins, I, for one, am not so much in love

with liberty but that I could have wished the popes better success than they found. We ought to welcome, all of us, the rule and authority of those who have more knowledge of what is right and good than ourselves.

If it was so; but the 'if' is the difficulty. We cannot be sure of this supreme excellence of the popes—at least some of us cannot. The intellectual revolt was only beginning, but wherever Albigenses or other speculative people were thinking for themselves, the popes had betaken themselves already to sword and faggot. As to morals, princes might be wilful and ambitious, and barons harsh, and law courts venal; but prelates, too, could be overbearing, and the Church courts were no purer than the civil courts. Every mediæval chronicler, every monastic annalist is for ever declaiming at the avarice and rapacity of Rome.

If the popes had reason for wishing to keep the military orders for their Janissaries, the French and English kings and the German Emperor might reasonably enough regard such an arrangement with alarm.

I have the greatest admiration for the poor brothers of the Temple. The fate which overtook them was as undeserved as it was cruel. But Nature, or Providence, or the tendencies of things, do as a fact sweep away obstacles which stand in the way of human development. Institutions may long survive their usefulness; but they are taken away when they become actively mischievous. One could only wish that the process of taking them away was not so often tainted with a violent injustice which blinds us to the necessity of their removal.

Their proper work was gone. If work was to be found for them in the future it was to be as the armed hand of the Papacy. But the Hildebrand theory of things was near its close also. The struggle between the popes and the temporal princes was to end in a compromise. The

popes were to have the shadow, or the spiritual supremacy; the civil powers were to have the substance, and thus for such a body as the Templars there was no place left. The kings in Europe intended to be sovereign, each in his own dominions. The Templars were, or might be, in the way. They had vast revenues, which, now that the war in the East was over, they would be free to use for other aims and ambitions. The national bishops and clergy resented their arrogance, and were jealous of their immunities. In some way or other the kings would find it necessary to suppress them. But it was no easy task. They were brave, they were noble. As soldiers they were the best organised in Europe. They were careless of death, and as long as they had the popes at their back it was quite certain that they would not fall without a struggle, while the popes could not in honour consent to the abolition of an order whose only crime was too great fidelity to the Holy See. It was accomplished by making the Templars the victims of an extraordinary accusation, which was intended to render them odious to mankind, and the story is one of the most curious in mediæval history.

As a rule I think it unwise to attempt to go behind the legal verdicts of distant ages. As a rule those who have been convicted of great crimes were probably guilty of them. Men have different ways of arriving at truth, but it is generally truth which they aim at, and so many circumstances are known to contemporaries of which posterity is absolutely ignorant, that it argues some presumption in posterity when it reviews confidently contemporary judgments. But the process of the Templars was peculiar. It was considered violent even in a violent age. The details are preserved almost to the smallest particulars, and are worth examining, if only as a picture of the manners of the time.

The French king at that time was Philip le Bel—Philip the Beautiful—one of the most remarkable sovereigns that France ever had. His daughter we know of as Edward the Second's queen—*She Wolf*, as the poet Gray calls her. The parent wolf was born in 1268. He became king at sixteen. He fell early into wars with England and Burgundy, extended his frontiers, drilled into subjection his own vassals. He then quarrelled, on the old grounds of the Papal pretensions, with Pope Boniface the Eighth. He had required a subsidy from his clergy. The Pope forbade them to pay. Philip answered with calling the Pope a fool, changing your 'Holiness' into your 'fatuity.' Boniface excommunicated Philip. Philip burnt the bull as boldly as Luther burnt Pope Leo's. He denounced Boniface as a heretic, made war upon him, and took him prisoner. The poor Pope died three days after, it was said of rage and mortification. Philip had been swift; Napoleon was not quicker in his movements. The Templars had supplied Boniface with money. They had not time to help him with arms. Boniface's successor, Benedict the Tenth, made peace on Philip's own terms. The French clergy were made to give him all that he wanted. The Templars appealed to their privileges; but they, too, had to submit under protest. The King was master of the situation, and meant to make the most of his victory. Benedict the Tenth reigned only for a year. The majority in the College of Cardinals was French. They chose after him the French Archbishop of Bordeaux, who was to reside in France, and could be made to do the King's bidding. Archbishop Bertrand became Pope at the beginning of 1305, under the name of Clement the Fifth.

So much for the position, which I have merely sketched in outline.

The Templars had no suspicion of their danger, and

that no hint of it reached them is a proof how few friends they could have had. In outward respect they stood high as ever. No scandal had been breathed against them. Their churches were the admiration of Europe. Faithful as they were to their salt, they had never so much as dreamed that the master whom they had served so loyally could betray them. What could they have to fear? And yet it got abroad somehow that the King would be well pleased if evidence could be found of the Templars' misconduct, and when evidence is wanted, especially if it will be well paid for, sooner or later it will be forthcoming.

In the Temple, as in other bodies, there were black sheep. Knights or servants of the order now and then broke the rules, and had to be punished, and, if incorrigible, to be expelled. At the accession of Clement the Fifth there were two knights thus degraded, in prison, at Toulouse; one of them, Esquin von Florian, who had been prior of Montfaucon, and the other with the unusual name of Noffodei. These men, after their expulsion, had been engaged in some conspiracy at Paris, and were under sentence of death. They informed the governor of the gaol that they could possess the King of a secret which would be worth another realm to him, and that if their lives were spared they would reveal it. They were sent up to the court; Philip examined them himself, and they made the following singular statement:—

1. Every Templar on his admission to the order swore to defend it for his life long, in all causes, just or unjust, without exception.

2. The chiefs of the order corresponded with the Saracens, and were more like Mahometans than Christians. The Novices were required to spit upon the cross, and trample on it, and deny Christ.

3. Anyone suspected of intending to betray the secrets of the order was murdered and secretly buried.

4. The Templars despised the sacraments. They worshipped idols, and were heretics.

5. They committed unnatural crimes. Their houses were nests of vice and profligacy.

6. They betrayed the Holy Land, and lived without fear of God.

These were the chief articles of a long list. There were many others; such as incest, worship of the devil under various forms, &c. &c.

It is certainly strange that if the Templars were so horribly depraved no whisper of their enormities should hitherto have gone abroad. It is strange that, as the secrets of the order were necessarily known to all its members, they should have ventured to expel misdemeanants who could so easily betray them. If they killed everyone that they suspected of letting out their mysteries, it is strange that they should have allowed the knights to confess to secular priests outside the order, as it is certain that in the absence of their own chaplains they habitually did.

The King took down the depositions, and, without going into the particulars of them, wrote privately to the Pope. On August 24, 1305—the dates are important—the Pope replied that it was a singular story. The King's letter was so positive, however, and the persons who had brought the letter to him were so positive, also, that he supposed the charges must be true. It seemed, however, that some rumour of the matter had by this time reached the Templars themselves. The Pope added that the Grand Master and the preceptors had also written to him, alluding to the accusations, and begging him to examine into them. This he would do, and would inform the King of the result.

The inquiry so conducted would have been fair enough, but for some reason it did not suit Philip's purpose. He sent the Pope the depositions themselves. The Pope made no further move. The whole matter was allowed to drop for a year; and the next thing which we find is a confidential and affectionate letter from the Pope to the Grand Master, who was in Cyprus, written in the following summer. Not a word was said by him about the accusations. The Pope seemed to have forgotten them. He merely told the Grand Master that he wished to consult him about various subjects of great consequence—the condition of the East, the prospects of the Crusades, and the general state of Christendom. He therefore begged De Molay to come to him in France as soon as he could, and to bring with him such of the knights as he had most dependence on.

De Molay clearly had no suspicion. He was under the impression that the headquarters of the Templars were to be transferred from Cyprus to France. They had a grand palace in Paris. The site of it still bears the old name, and the palace itself was the prison of the royal family in the Revolution. Thither came De Molay, bringing with him the chest, or chests, of the order twelve mules' load of gold and silver. The King received him with the proper courtesies. There was no sign of displeasure. The treasure was put away in the Templars' vaults. The Pope was at Poitiers. De Molay and the preceptors went to him, and had a long friendly conversation with him. The projected union of the military orders was certainly the subject of part of it, and De Molay was less cordial on the subject than perhaps Clement wished. This was at the end of 1306, nearly two years after the two knights had told their story. All was outwardly smooth. The winter went by. In the spring there were once more

rumours in the air which made De Molay uneasy. In April, 1307, he went again to the Pope, taking the four French preceptors with him, and spoke very earnestly about it. The Pope listened with apparent satisfaction, and dismissed them as if perfectly assured that the accusations were baseless.

Again one asks, Was all this treachery?—was it a plan agreed upon between the Pope and the King to put the Templars off their guard, to seize the treasure, and get into their power the persons of the Grand Master and the leading knights? That certainly was the effect. Such a plot, supposing it real, might be defended if the charges against the Templars were true. They were a formidable body. Had they been alarmed, and had their chief been at large, they could perhaps have set the King at defiance. At least they could not have been suppressed without desperate bloodshed. But all turns on the truth of the charges, or on the King's sincere belief in them.

Even kings and popes are seldom deliberately and consciously wicked. But, like other men, they have a power of convincing themselves of what they wish to believe. The Pope was afraid of Philip, and wished to please him. The Templars had really become an anomaly. They were a danger to the State. Philip might legitimately wish to bring the order to an end. From a wish to end them to a conviction of their crimes the step would be short in a politic ruler's mind. Politics are a corrupting trade.

Any way, the Templars were lulled into absolute security. They were spread all over France in their various houses. At the beginning of October this same year, 1307, the King sent a secret instruction round the provinces for their universal and simultaneous arrest. Not a whisper was allowed to reach them. They had lived in friendless and haughty isolation. They had relied on the Pope, and the

Pope had failed them. The only support which never fails—some legitimate place among the useful agencies of the time—this was wanting.

III

At the break of day on October 13, 1307, the Templars were surprised in their beds, carried off to the provincial prisons of the different bishops and flung into dungeons. More willing gaolers they could not have had. They had long defied the bishops, and the bishops' turn was come. They took on themselves the responsibility of the King's action. Such prelates as were in Paris, with the heads of the University and the abbots and priors of the religious houses, assembled two days after in the Templars' Hall. They drew up an Act of Accusation, in which the knights were described as ravening wolves, idolaters, perjurers, and guilty of the vilest crimes. They asserted, to meet the inevitable incredulity, that the Grand Master and the preceptors had confessed their guilt. The Templars belonged to Europe—not to France alone. Philip sent circulars to Edward the Second of England, to Germany, to the Kings of Aragon, Portugal, and Castile, telling his story, and inviting them to follow his example. His letter was read in England with astonishment. A great council was called at Westminster. Edward with his peers and prelates replied that the charges were incredible. The Templars were men of unstained honour. The Pope must examine into the matter. He would take no action till the Pope had decided. He sent his own protest to his brother princes.

The Pope—the poor, infallible Pope—was in straits; he had not been consulted before the arrest; he could not refuse an inquiry; yet, perhaps, he knew too well how an

honest inquiry would terminate. The King and the bishops had begun the work, and they had no choice but to go through with it. Before the Pope could proceed the bishops might prepare their case. It was winter. The Templars had been flung into cold, damp dungeons, ill-fed and ill-clothed. In the first month they had begun to die of mere hardship. They were informed of the charges against them; they were told that denial was useless, that the Grand Master and preceptors had confessed, and wished them all to confess. They were promised rewards and liberty if they obeyed; imprisonment and torture if they were obstinate. After some weeks of this, to bring them into a proper frame of mind, the bishops issued commissions to examine them.

And I must now beg you to attend. What I am about to tell you is strict fact; as well authenticated as any historical facts can be. Belief, or the credulity of nobleness, had created the Templars. Belief, the ugly side of it, the credulity of hatred was now to destroy them. Universal confession would alone satisfy the world's suspicions, and confession the King and his prelates were resolved to have. Wasted with hunger and cold, the knights were brought one by one before the bishops' judges. The depositions of the two approvers were formed into interrogatories. Did the knights, on their admission to the order, spit on the cross? Did they deny Christ? Did they receive a dispensation to commit unnatural offences? Did they worship idols? A paper was read to them professing to be the Grand Master's confession; and to these questions they were required to answer yes or no. A few said yes, and were rewarded and dismissed. By far the greater number said that the charges were lies; they said they did not believe that the Grand Master had confessed; if he had he had lied in his throat. And now what happened to the men who answered thus? They were stripped naked, their

hands were tied behind their backs; a rope was fastened to their wrists, the other end of which was slung over a beam, and they were dragged up and down till they were senseless, or till they acknowledged what the bishops wanted. If this failed, their feet were fixed in a frame like the old English stocks, rubbed with oil, and held to the fire till the toes, or even the feet themselves, dropped off. Or the iron boot was used, or the thumb-screws, or another unnameable and indescribably painful devilry. Thirty-six of them died under these tortures in Paris alone. The rest so treated said anything which the bishops required. They protested afterwards that their confessions, as they were called, had been wrung out of them by pain only. They were returned to their dungeons, to be examined again when the Pope pleased. But having confessed to heresy, they were told that, if they withdrew their confessions afterwards, they would be treated as relapsed heretics, and would be burnt at the stake. Such was then the Church's law; and it was no idle threat.

I am not telling you a romance. These scenes did actually occur all over France; and it was by this means that the evidence was got together under which the Templars were condemned. But we are only at the first stage of the story.

The confessions were published to the world, and the world, not knowing how they had been obtained, supposed that they must be true. The Pope knew better; he remonstrated; he said that the Templars were not subject to the bishops, who were going beyond their power. The King accused him of trying to shield the Templars' guilt; the bishops, he said, were doing nothing but their duty, and the Faculty of Theology at Paris declared that no privilege could shelter heresy. The conduct of the Grand Master and the four preceptors is a mystery. They were

evidently bewildered, disheartened, shocked, and terrified, and confessions alleged to have been made by them were certainly taken down and published. It appears, also, that in January, 1308, three months after the arrest, they were brought before the Pope, and they were alleged to have confessed again on this occasion, and to have received absolution from him. But the Pope did not confirm this allegation, and was still incredulous. The other Powers of Christendom insisted on a fuller inquiry. The formal sanction of the Papacy was required before the order could be suppressed, and even Clement, pliable as he was, could not proceed on the evidence before him. In the summer, six months later, seventy-two Templars—seventy-two only of the thousands still surviving in France—were found willing to appear before him and give the required answers to the interrogatories. These seventy-two did say that they had abjured Christ, had spit on the cross, had worshipped idols, and the rest of it. They were asked why they had at first denied these things? They said that they had forgotten, but had since remembered. Seventy-two, after all that bribes and tortures and threats could do, were not enough. The Pope was answerable to Christendom. The French bishops themselves were on their trial before the rest of the world; the sentence could not rest on their word alone. The Pope found himself obliged to appoint an independent commission, when the knights could be heard in their own defence with an appearance of freedom. A cardinal or two, an archbishop, and two or three papal lawyers, were formed into a court which was to sit in Paris. All precautions were alleged to be taken that the Templars should have a fair hearing if they wished it, without fear or prejudice. Every prisoner who would say that he was ready to defend the order was to be brought to Paris to be heard. Notice of the appointment

of the commission was sent round to all the courts of Europe.

If Philip, if the bishops really believed in the Templars' guilt they ought to have welcomed the Pope's action. They had been cruel, but if they could prove their case their rough handling would not be judged severely. They were in no haste, however. The commission was appointed in August, 1308. It did not sit for another year. The Templars were now dying by hundreds. Their death-bed declarations were all protests of innocence. The survivors demanded in vain that these declarations should be made public. When they learnt that they were to be heard before representatives of the Pope their hopes revived, and more than a thousand at once gave their names as ready to appear in the defence.

In August, 1309, the court was opened. It sat in the Convent of St. Geneviève. Citations were issued, but no one appeared. The Templars had been brought up to Paris, but they had been told on the way that if they retracted their confessions the Pope intended to burn them as relapsed; and, after the treatment which they had met with, anything seemed possible. They claimed to be heard by counsel. This was refused. The court adjourned till November 22, when some twenty of the knights were brought in and were asked if they were ready with a defence. They said that they were illiterate soldiers; they knew nothing of law pleading. If they might have their liberty with arms and horses they would meet their accusers in the field. That was all that they could do.

It was necessary to begin with the Grand Master. On November 26, De Molay himself was introduced into the court. He was an old man, battered by a life of fighting, and worn by hard treatment in prison. Being asked what he had to say, he complained of the refusal of counsel.

He claimed for himself and the order to be heard before a mixed court of lay peers and prelates. To such a judgment he said that they were willing to submit. They protested against a tribunal composed only of Churchmen.

Unfortunately for themselves the Templars were a religious order, and the Church alone could try them. The commission under which the court was constituted was read over. It was there stated that the Grand Master had made a full confession of the order's guilt; and from his behaviour it might have been thought that he was hearing of this extraordinary assertion for the first time. We have the account of the proceedings exactly as they were taken down by the secretary. He crossed himself thrice. 'Videbatur se esse valde stupefactum.' He seemed entirely stupefied. When he found his voice he said that if the commissioners had not been priests he would have known how to answer them. They were not there, they replied, to accept challenges. He said he was aware of that, but he wished to God that there was the same justice in France as there was among the Turks and Saracens, where a false witness was cut to pieces. No confession was produced to which he had attached his hand, and of other evidence there was none. The King's chancellor read a passage from a chronicle to the effect that Saladin, a hundred and twenty years before, had called the Templars a set of villains. Again De Molay appeared stupefied—as well he might. He claimed privilege, and demanded to be heard by the Pope in person.

The Preceptor of Payens then appeared. He admitted that he had confessed with many of his brethren, but he protested that their confessions were false. They had been handed over to a set of men, some of whom had been expelled from the order for infamous crimes. They had been tortured, and many of them had died on the rack. He for

himself had had his hands crushed till the blood ran from his nails. He had been flung into a well and left lying there; he had been for two years in a dungeon. He could have borne to be killed—to be roasted, to be boiled—anything which would be over in a moderate time, but such prolonged agonies were beyond human strength. If he was treated so again he would deny all that he was then saying, and renew his confession. He was remitted to custody, and the commissioners cautioned the gaoler not to deal hardly with him for what he had said. The caution was necessary. Many of the knights were still afraid to speak, or would say nothing except that they had been tortured, and would speak if they were set free. As long as they were kept prisoners they dared not. The commissioners, to encourage them, sent out a warning to the bishops, and again assured the knights of protection. The court, they said, wanted nothing but the truth. The knights might tell it freely; no harm should happen to them.

This gave them courage. Six hundred of them now came forward, one after the other, and told the secrets of their prisons, with the infernal cruelties which they had suffered there. A list was produced of those who had died. One very curious letter was read which had been written by a high official and sent to a party of Templars at Sens. It was to the effect that the Bishop of Orleans was coming to reconcile them. They were advised to make submission, and in that case were promised all kindness; but they were to understand that the Pope had distinctly ordered that those who retracted their confessions should be burnt. The official in question was called in. He said that he did not think that he could have written such a letter; the seal was his, but it might have been written by his clerk.

One prisoner was carried into the court, unable to

stand. His feet had been held to the fire until they had been destroyed.

The evidence was still utterly inconsistent. Priests came forward, who said they had habitually heard Templars' confessions, yet had heard nothing of the alleged enormities. Others, on the other hand, adhered to the story, telling many curious details—how Templars had told them that they had been required to spit on the cross, how they had been frightened and refused, but had at last consented—'non corde sed ore'—not with their hearts, but with their lips. But the great majority were still resolute in their denials. At last the whole six hundred made a common affirmation that every one of these Articles named in the Pope's Bull was a lie—the religion of the Templars was pure and immaculate, and so had always been, and whoever said to the contrary was an infidel and a heretic. This they were ready to maintain in all lawful ways, but they prayed to be released and be heard, if not before a mixed tribunal, then before a General Council. Those who had confessed had lied; but they had lied under torture themselves, or terrified by the tortures which they witnessed. Some might have been bribed, which they said was public and notorious; the wonder was that any should have dared to tell the truth. As a refinement of cruelty, the bishops had refused the sacraments to the dying.

The commissioners were now at a loss. Individuals might be worked upon by fear and hope to repeat their confessions, but the great body of the order were consistent in their protest. The commissioners said that they could not hear them all. They had asked for counsel; let them appoint proctors who could speak for them. This seemed fair; but the unfortunate men were afraid of trusting themselves to proctors. Proctors being few, might be

tempted or frightened into betraying them. They still trusted the Pope. They had been invited to speak, and they had been promised protection. The members of the court had some kind of conscience, and it began to seem likely that the case might not end as the King and the bishops required. They could not afford to let it go forth to the world that the Templars were innocent after all and had been brutally and barbarously treated without sufficient cause; public opinion did not go for much in those days, but they were at the bar of all Europe.

We need not assume that they themselves did not believe in the Templars' guilt; men have a wonderful power of making themselves believe what they wish to believe. If the Templars had been formidable before the attack on them was begun, they would be doubly formidable if they came out of their trial clean as their own white robes; it was necessary to stop these pleas of innocence, and the French prelates were equal to the occasion.

While the Pope's commissioners were sitting at St. Geneviève the Archbishop of Sens opened a provincial court of his own in another part of Paris. The list of knights was brought before him who had given their names as intending to retract their confessions. On May 10, 1310, four of the Templars demanded audience of the Papal judges. They said that the knights had been invited by the Pope to defend the order; they had been told to speak the truth without fear, and had been promised that no harm should happen to them. They now learnt that in consequence of what they had said on the very next day a great number were to be put on their trial before the Archbishop of Sens as relapsed heretics. They said truly, that if this was permitted, it would make the inquiry a farce—it would stain irreparably the honour of

the Holy See. They entreated the commissioners to interpose and prevent the Archbishop from proceeding.

The commissioners professed to be sorry—they could hardly do less; but they said that the Archbishop was not under their jurisdiction. They themselves represented the Holy See; the bishops had an independent authority; they had no power over the bishops nor the bishops over them. They did promise, however, to think the matter over and see if anything could be done.

The Archbishop did not allow them time for much thinking; he was a sturdy prelate and had the courage of his office. Two days after, on the morning of the 12th, just as the commissioners were going to chapel (they were particular about all these things it seems), word was brought them that fifty-four of the knights who had applied to be heard before them had been tried and sentenced and were to be burnt at the stake that very afternoon. This time the commissioners were really disturbed. They were not prepared for such prompt action—their own dignity, the Holy Father's dignity was compromised. They sent in haste to the Archbishop, to beg him at least to postpone the execution; every Templar who had died hitherto had declared the order innocent, and these would do the same. If witnesses were invited to speak, and were then burnt for speaking, they would have to close their court. Already the very report of the Archbishop's intentions had so terrified the knights that some of them had gone out of their minds.

The Archbishop was made of tougher stuff—Fouquier Tinville and the Revolutionary tribunal were not more resolute. To terrify the knights into silence was precisely what he intended. Accordingly that same afternoon, as he had ordered, those fifty-four 'poor brothers in Christ,' whose real fault had been that they were too faithful to

the Father of Christendom, were carried out to the Place St. Antoine, near where the Bastille stood, and were there roasted to death. They bore their fate like men. Every one of them, torn and racked as they had been, declared with his last breath that, so far as he knew, the accusations against the order were groundless and wilful slanders. Half-a-dozen more were burnt a day or two after to deepen the effect. The Archbishop clearly was not afraid of man or devil. Some say a sensitive conscience is a sign of a weak character. No one can accuse the Archbishop of Sens of having a weak character; he knew what he was doing and what would come of it.

I will read you a declaration made the next day before the Pope's commissioners by Sir Amaric de Villiers, one of the prisoners. He said that he was fifty years old and had been a brother of the order for twenty. The clerk of the court read over the list of crimes with which the order was charged. He turned pale; he struck his breast; he raised his hand to the altar; he dropped on his knees. On peril of his soul, he said, on peril of all the punishments denounced on perjury, praying that if he was not speaking truth the ground might open and he might go down quick into hell, those charges were all false. He allowed that he had confessed on the rack. He had been taken to St. Antoine the evening before. He had seen his fifty-four brethren brought in carts and thrown into the flames. He had been in such fear that he doubted if he himself could endure to be so handled. With such an end before him, he might say if he was brought again before the bishops, and they required it of him, that he had not only denied his Lord, but had murdered him. He implored the judges to keep to themselves what he was then saying. If the Archbishop got hold of it, he would be burnt like the rest.

The terror had cut deep. The Pope's commissioners

had neither the courage to adopt the Archbishop's methods nor to repudiate and disown them. They sent to him to say that they must suspend their sittings. He answered scornfully that they might do as they pleased. He and his suffragans had met to finish the process against the Templars, and they intended to do it. A few more victims were sacrificed. The rest of the knights, who had offered to speak before the commissioners, were naturally silent. The commissioners could not help them. They withdrew their defence, and the commission was adjourned till the following November.

The tragic story was now winding up. When November came the court sate again, reduced in number and reduced to a form. The duty of it thenceforward was simply to hear such of the order as had been broken into submission, and were willing to repeat the story which had been thrust into their mouths, with such details as imagination or reality could add to it. I do not suppose that the accusations were absolutely without foundation. Very often the witnesses seemed to be relating things which they really remembered. The Templars were a secret society, and secret societies have often forms of initiation which once had a meaning, with an affectation of solemnity and mysticism. I am not a Freemason. Many of you no doubt are. I have heard that the ceremonies of that order, though perfectly innocent, are of a kind which malice or ignorance might misinterpret, if there was an object in bringing the Freemasons into disrepute. You know best if that is so. Somewhere abroad I was myself once admitted into a mysterious brotherhood. I was sworn to secrecy, and therefore I can tell you little about it. I was led through a narrow passage into a vast darkened hall, where some hundred dim, half-seen figures were sitting in silence. I was taken to a table in the middle with a single

candle on it. There—but my revelations must end. I could have believed myself before the famous Vehm Gericht. The practices alleged against the Templars as crimes were in fact most of them innocent. They were accused of worshipping a skull; some said it had jewels in its eyes, some that it had none. An accidental question brought out that it was a relic of an Eastern saint, such as any Catholic might treat with reverence. The officers of the order were accused of hearing confessions and giving priestly absolution, and this was a deadly offence. By the rules of the order the lay superiors were directed to hear confessions and inflict penance, but were forbidden to absolve. Confusion might easily have arisen.

The Novices were said to receive licenses to commit an abominable sin, yet there was scarcely a single knight who could be brought to say that he had even heard of such a sin being committed.

The spitting on the cross and the denial of Christ are less easy to explain. Thousands of the knights absolutely denied that such outrages were ever seen or heard of, yet a great many did with considerable consistency describe a singular ceremony of that kind. It has been supposed that the Templars by their long residence in Syria had ceased to be Christians, and had adopted Eastern heresies, that they were Gnostics, Manichees, or I know not what. This is a guess, and I do not think a likely one. They were mere soldiers. They were never a learned order. They left no books behind them, or writings of any kind. The services in the Templars' churches were conducted with peculiar propriety. Every witness declared that the very crosses which they said had been spit upon were treated afterwards with the deepest reverence. Nor was there really any attempt at concealment. Those who had been frightened at the forms of initiation were told to

go and confess to secular priests in the neighbourhood. Several instances of such confessions were produced. The confessors sometimes had treated what they heard as of no consequence. They had satisfied their penitents' consciences, not always in the same way. One said that the spitting on the cross was meant as a trial of constancy. The Saracens if they were taken prisoners would require them to deny Christ or be killed. The officers of the order wanted to see how they would abide the test. Another said it was a trial of obedience. The Novice swore to obey his superiors in all things without exception. The spitting on the cross may have been the severest trial which could be imagined. In no instances at all was it ever suggested that the forms of initiation pointed to any real impiety.

So strange a tale is not likely to have rested upon nothing. I suppose the custom may have varied in different houses. Men are men, and may not have been uniformly wise. But the more one reads the evidence the plainer it becomes that the confessions, and even the terms of them, were arranged beforehand. The witnesses produced after the commission met again told one tale. If they ever varied from it they were brought swiftly back into harmony. Sir John de Pollencourt gave the stereotyped answer. He had spat on the cross. He had done this and that; but we read in the Record: The commissioners, seeing him pale and terrified, bade him for his soul's welfare speak the truth whatever it might be. He need not fear. They would tell no one what he might say. He hesitated; then, on his oath, he declared that he had spoken falsely. He had not denied Christ. He had not spat on the cross. He had not received license to sin. He had confessed before the bishops in fear of death; and because his fellow-prisoners said that they would be killed unless they admitted what the bishops required.

The commissioners were not as secret as they promised to be. Sir John de Pollencourt was made to know behind the scenes what would happen to him if he was not submissive. Accordingly, four days after, the same witness was brought in again, withdrew his denial and again confessed. It is easy to see what had happened in the interval.

So handled, the rest of the process went on smoothly. Parties of knights who had escaped the torture chambers of the bishops and thus had not been forced into confession continued to speak out. On one occasion twenty or thirty appeared in a body, and pointed to the red crosses broidered on their clothes. That cross, they said, signified that they would shed their blood for their Redeemer. If, as they were told, their Grand Master had confessed that they had denied Christ, or if any of their brethren had confessed it, they had lied in their throats, to the peril of their own souls. But the mass of the knights had by this time abandoned their cause as hopeless. By the end of nine months a sufficient number of so-called confessions had been repeated before the commissioners to satisfy the Pope's scruples. The commissioners were themselves only too eager to wind up the scandalous inquiry. Not so much as an effort had been made to discover the real truth. The result was a foregone conclusion, and every utterance which could interfere with it had been stifled by cord or fire. The report was sent to Clement. A council of bishops was called together. It was laid before them and accepted as conclusive. The order of the Templars was pronounced to have disgraced itself and was suppressed. The sinning knights were scattered about the world—some went back to the world—some became Benedictines or Cistercians. Some gave their swords and services to secular princes, having had enough of the Church. Some disappeared into their families. Their estates the Pope had insisted must

be reserved to the Church; and were nominally given to the Knights Hospitallers. But the King extorted such an enormous fine from them that the Hospitallers gained little by their rivals' overthrow.

The Grand Master's end remains to be told. The confessions which he and three of the head preceptors were alleged to have made are extant, and resembled the rest, but we have seen how he behaved when the confession attributed to himself was read over to him before the commissioners. He had appealed to the Pope but without effect, and had been left with the three preceptors in prison. When the edict for the suppression was issued, and the other knights were dismissed, De Molay and his companions were sentenced to perpetual confinement. But the world was after all less satisfied of the Templars' guilt than Philip could have wished, and in some way or other it was necessary to convince the public that the Grand Master's confession was genuine.

The bull of suppression was to be read aloud to the people of Paris. It was brought up with special solemnity by a bishop and a cardinal, and De Molay and the others were to be publicly shown upon a stage on the occasion. On March 18, 1314, a platform had been erected in one of the squares, with chairs of state for the cardinal, the Archbishop of Sens, and other distinguished persons. The Grand Master and his comrades were produced and were placed where the world could see them. The cardinal rose to read the sentence. When he came to the list of enormities of which, as the bull alleged, the Templars had been found guilty, and when the Grand Master heard it stated that he had himself admitted the charges to be true, he rose up, and in a loud voice which everyone could hear, he cried out that it was false.

Philip himself was not present, but he was in Paris and

not far off. Word was brought him of the Grand Master's contumacy. Not troubling himself with forms of law, he ordered that the Grand Master should be instantly burnt, and his provincials along with him, unless they saved themselves by submission. Two of them, Sir Hugh von Peyraud and Geoffrey de Gonville, gave in and were sent back to their dungeons. De Molay and the third were carried directly to the island in the Seine, and were burnt the same evening in the light of the setting sun.

In his end, like Samson, De Molay pulled down the fabric of the prosecution. There was thenceforward a universal conviction that the Templars had been unjustly dealt with. The popular feeling shaped itself into a tradition (possibly it was a real fact), that as the flames were choking him, the last Grand Master summoned the Pope and the King to meet him before the tribunal of God. Clement died in agony a few weeks after. A little later Philip the Beautiful was flung by a vicious horse, and he too went to his account.

A very few words will tell now how the Templars fared in the rest of Europe. There was no real belief in their guilt; but their estates had been given to them for a purpose which no longer existed. They were rich, and they had nothing to do. They were an anachronism and a danger. When the Pope agreed to their suppression, there was no motive to resist the Pope's decision; and they did not attempt to resist it themselves. Nothing is more remarkable in the whole story than the almost universal acquiescence of an armed and disciplined body of men in the Pope's judgment. They had been trained to obedience. The Pope had been their sovereign. The Pope wished that they should cease to exist; and they fell to pieces without a word, unless it were to protest their innocence of the crimes of which they were accused.

In England Philip's charges had at first been received with resentful incredulity, but neither king, nor peers, nor Church had any motive to maintain the Templars after the Pope had spoken. For form's sake there was an investigation on the lines of the French interrogatories, but there was no torture or cruelty. They knew that they were to go, and that they would be dealt with generously. The process was a curious one. As a body the English Templars stated that the forms of admission to the order were, as far as they knew, uniform. What was done in one house was done in all. If any of the brethren liked to depose to this or that ceremony being observed they would not contradict them, and thus the difficulty was got over. A certain number of knights were ready to give the necessary evidence. Some hundreds of outside persons, chiefly monks or secular priests, deposed to popular rumours, conversations, and suchlike, names not given; a certain person heard another person say this and that. What was got at in this way was often not dreadful. A preceptor in Lincolnshire had been heard to maintain that 'men died as animals died;' therefore, it might be inferred that he did not believe in immortality. Templars sometimes had crosses worked into their drawers; therefore they were in the habit of sitting upon the cross. The English evidence threw light often on the manners of the age, but I cannot go into that. I have tried your patience too long already. I will, therefore, sum up briefly.

When all is said the story is a strange one, and I cannot pretend to leave it clear of doubt. But no lawyer, no sensible man can accept as conclusive evidence mere answers to interrogatories extorted by torture and the threat of death. A single denial made under such circumstances is worth a thousand assents dragged out by rack and gibbet. If the order had really been as guilty as was pretended,

some of the knights at least would have confessed on their death-beds. Not one such confession was ever produced, while the dying protestations of innocence were all suppressed. The King and the Inquisitors force us into incredulity by their own unscrupulous ferocity. It is likely enough that, like other orders, the Templars had ceremonies, perhaps not very wise, intended to impress the imagination, but that those ceremonies were intentionally un-Christian or diabolical, I conceive to be entirely unproved. They fell partly because they were rich, partly for political reasons, which, for all I know, may have been good and sound; but the act of accusation I regard as a libel invented to justify the arbitrary destruction of a body which, if not loved, was at least admired for its services to Christendom.

It remains only to emphasise the moral that institutions can only be kept alive while they answer the end for which they were created. Nature will not tolerate them longer, and in one way or another shakes them down. The Templars had come into existence to fight the infidels in Palestine. Palestine was abandoned to the infidels, and the Templars were needed no longer. They were outwardly strong as ever, brave, organised, and in character unblemished, but the purpose of them being gone, they were swept away by a hurricane. So it is with all human organisations. They grow out of man's necessities, and are mortal as men are. Empires, monarchies, aristocracies, guilds, orders, societies, religious creeds, rise in the same way, and in the same way disappear when they stand in the way of other things.

But mankind are mean creatures. When they destroy these creations of theirs they paint them in the blackest colours to excuse their own violence. The black colours in which Philip the Beautiful and his bishops were pleased to

paint the Templars will, perhaps, if history cares to trouble itself about the matter, be found to attach rather to the extraordinary men calling themselves successors of the Apostles who racked and roasted them.

You in Scotland found no great reason to love bishops, and the history of the Templars does not increase our affection for them.

THE NORWAY FJORDS

On June 30, 1881, we sailed from Southampton Water in the steam yacht 'Severn' to spend ten weeks in the Norway Fjords—Fjords or Friths, for the word is the same. The Scandinavian children of the sea carried their favourite names with them. Frith is Fjord; our Cumberland Scale *Force* would be called Scale Foss between the North Cape and the Baltic. The yacht was spacious; over 300 tons. Cabins, equipments, engines, captain, steward, crew the best of their kind. Our party was small; only four in all. My friend, whose guest I was, and whom I shall call D——, two ladies, and myself. D—— had furnished himself with such knowledge as was attainable in London, for the scenes which we were to explore. He had studied Norse. He could speak it: he could understand and be understood. He was a sportsman, but a sportsman only as subsidiary to more rational occupations. He was going to Norway to catch salmonidæ: not, however, to catch them only, but to study the varieties of that most complicated order of fish. He was going also to geologise and to botanise, to examine rocks and river and glaciers and flowers; while all of us were meaning to acquaint ourselves as far as we could with the human specimens still to be found in the crater of the old volcano from which those ship-loads of murdering 'Danes' poured out ten centuries ago to change the face of Europe.

And to see Norway, the real Norway, within moderate compass of time is possible only with such means as a

steam-yacht provides. There are great lines of road in Norway along the practicable routes, but very few *are* practicable; nine-tenths of the country, and the most interesting parts, are so walled off by mountains, are so intrenched among the fjords, as to be for ever unapproachable by land, while the water highways lead everywhere—magnificent canals, fashioned by the elemental forces, who can say how or when?

From the west coast there run inland with a general easterly direction ten or twelve main channels of sea, penetrating from fifty to a hundred miles into the very heart of the Northern Peninsula. They are of vast depth, and from half a mile to two miles broad. The mountains rise on both sides sheer from the water's edge; the lower ranges densely timbered with pine and birch and alder. Above these belts of forest soar ranges of lofty peaks, five or six thousand feet up, the snow lying thick upon them in the midst of summer, glaciers oozing down the gorges, like cataracts arrested in their fall by the Frost Enchanter, motionless, yet with the form of motion. From the snow, from the ice when the glaciers reach a warmer level, melt streams which swell at noon, as the sun grows hot, descend in never-ending waterfalls, cascade upon cascade, through the ravines which they have cut for themselves in millions of years. In the evening they dwindle away, and at night fall silent as the frost resumes its power.

From the great central fjords branches strike out right and left, some mere inlets ending after a few miles, some channels which connect one fjord with another. The surface of Norway, as it is shown flat upon a chart, is lined and intersected by these waterways as the surface of England is by railways. The scenery, though for ever changing, changes like the pattern of a kaleidoscope, the same materials readjusted in varying combinations; the

same great rivers of sea-water, the same mountain walls, the same ice and snow on the summits, the same never-ending pines and birches, with an emerald carpet between the stems where in summer the universal whortleberry hides the stones under the most brilliant green. The short fjords and the large are identical in general features, save that, lying at right angles to the prevailing winds, the surface of these lateral waters is usually undisturbed by a single ripple; the clouds may be racing over the high ridges, but down below no breath can reach. Hence the light is undispersed. The eye, instead of meeting anywhere with white water, sees only rocks, woods, and cataracts reversed as in a looking-glass. This extreme stillness and the optical results of it, are the cause, I suppose, of the gloom of Norwegian landscape-painting.

How these fjords were formed is, I believe, as yet undetermined. Water has furrowed the surface of the globe into many a singular shape; water, we are told, cut out the long gorge below Niagara; but water, acting as we now know it, scarcely scooped out of the hardest known rock these multitudinous fissures so uniform in character between walls which pierce the higher strata of the clouds, between cliffs which in some places rise, as in the Geiranger, perpendicular for a thousand feet; the fjords themselves of such extraordinary depth, and deepest always when furthest from the sea. Where they enter the Atlantic, there is bottom generally in a hundred fathoms. In the Sogne, a hundred miles inland, you find 700 fathoms. Rivers cutting their way through rock and soil could never have achieved such work as this. Ice is a mighty thaumaturgist, and ice has been busy enough in Norway. The fjords were once filled with ice up to a certain level; the level to which it rose can be traced on the sharp angles ground off the rounded stone, and the scores of the glacier plane on

the polished slabs of gneiss or granite. But at some hundreds of feet above the present water-line the ice action ends, and cliffs and crags are scarred and angular and weather-splintered to where they are lost in the eternal snow. The vast moraines which occasionally block the valleys tell the same story. The largest that I saw was between four and five hundred feet high, and we have to account for chasms which, if we add the depth of the water to the height of the mountains above it, are 9,000 feet from the bottom to the mountain crest.

The appearance of Norway is precisely what it would have been if the surface had cracked when cooling into a thousand fissures, longitudinal and diagonal, if these fissures had at one time been filled with sea-water, at another with ice, and the sides above the point to which the ice could rise had been chipped and torn and weather-worn by rain and frost through endless ages. Whether this is, in fact, the explanation of their form, philosophers will in good time assure themselves; meantime, this is what they are outwardly like, which for present purposes is all that need be required.

A country so organised can be traversed in no way so conveniently as by a steam-yacht, which carries the four-and-twenty winds in its boiler. It is not the romance of yachting; and the steamer, beside the graceful schooner with its snowy canvas, seems prosaic and mechanical. The schooner does well in the open water with free air and sea room; but let no schooner venture into the Norway fjords, where slant winds come not by which you can make a course by a long reach, where there is either a glassy calm or a wind blowing up or down. If you reached the end of the Sogne you might spend a season in beating back to the sea, and, except in some few spots where you might not be able to go, you cannot so much as anchor on account of the

depth of water. Shut in among these mountains, you may drift becalmed in a sailing-yacht for weeks together, while to a steamer the course is as easy and sure as to a carriage on a turnpike road. Your yacht is your house; like a wishing carpet, it transports you wherever you please to go, and is here and there and anywhere. You note your position on the chart; you scan it with the sense that the world of Norway is all before you to go where you like; you choose your next anchoring-place; you point it out to the pilot; you know your speed—there is no night in the summer months—you dine; you smoke your evening cigar; you go to your berth; you find yourself at breakfast in your new surroundings.

So then, on that June evening, we steamed out of the Solent. Our speed in smooth water was ten knots; our distance from Udsire Light, for which our course was laid, was 700 miles. It was calm and cloudless, but unusually cold. When night brought the stars we saw the comet high above us, the tail of him pointing straight away from the sun, as if the head was a lens through which the sun's rays lighted the atoms of ether behind it. Sleep, which had grown fitful in the London season, came back to us at once in our berths unscared by the grinding of the screw. We woke fresh and elastic when the decks were washed. The floors of the cabins lifted on hinges, and below were baths into which the sea-water poured till we could float in it. When we came up and looked about us we were running past the North Foreland. With the wind aft and the water smooth we sped on. I lay all the morning on a sofa in the deck cabin, and smoked and read Xenophon's 'Memorabilia.' So one day passed, and then another. On the evening of July 2 we passed through a fleet of English trawlers, a few units of the ten thousand feeders of the London stomach, the four million human beings within the bills of mortality

whom the world combines to nourish. We were doing two hundred miles a day. The calm continued, and the ladies so far had suffered nothing. There was no motion save the never-resting heave of the ocean swell. Homer had observed that long undulation; Ulysses felt it when coming back from Hades to Circe's island. The thing is the same, though the word 'ocean' has changed its meaning. To Homer Ocean was a river which ran past the grove of Proserpine. It was not till the ship had left the river mouth for the open sea that she lifted on the wave.[1]

On the third afternoon the weather changed. The cold of the high latitude drove us into our winter clothes. The wind rose from the north-west, bringing thick rain with it, and a heavy beam sea. The yacht rolled 20° each way. Long steamers, without sails to steady them, always do roll, but our speed was not altered. We passed Udsire Light on the 3rd, at seven in the evening, and then groped our way slowly, for, though there was no longer any night, we could see little for fog and mist. At last we picked up a pilot, who brought us safely into the roadstead at Bergen, where we were to begin our acquaintance with Norway. Bergen stands fifteen miles inland, with three fjords leading to it, built on a long tongue of rock between two inlets, and overhung with mountains. There is a great trade there, chiefly in salt fish, I believe—any way the forty thousand inhabitants seemed, from the stir on shore and in the harbour, to have plenty to occupy them. We landed and walked round. There are no handsome houses, but no beggars and no signs of poverty. 'You have poor here,' I said to a coal merchant, who had come on board for orders, and could speak English. 'Poor?' he said;

[1] Αὐτὰρ ἐπεὶ ποταμοῖο λίπεν ῥόον Ὠκεανοῖο
Νηῦς, ἀπὸ δ' ἵκετο κῦμα θαλάσσης εὐρυπόροιο.
Odyssey, xii. 1, 2.

'yes, many; not, of course, such poor as you have in England. Everyone has enough to eat.' To our sensations it was extremely cold; cold as an English January. But cold and heat are relative terms; and an English January might seem like summer after Arctic winters. The Bergen people took it to be summer, for we found a public garden where a band played; and there were chairs and tables for coffee out of doors. Trees and shrubs were acclimatised. Lilacs, acacias, and horse-chestnuts were in flower. There were roses in bud, and the gardeners were planting out geraniums. We saw the fish market; everywhere a curious place, for you see there the fish that are caught, the fishermen who catch them, with their boats and gear, the market women, and the citizens who come to buy. It is all fish in Bergen. The telegrams on the wall in the Bourse tell you only how fish are going in Holland and Denmark. The talk is of fish. On the rocks outside the town stand huge ricks, looking like bean stacks, but they are of dried cod and ling. The streets and squares smell of fish. A steamer bound for Hull lay close to us in the roadstead; which to leeward might have been winded for a mile. Lads stagger about the streets cased between a pair of halibuts, like the Chelsea paupers between two advertisement boards inviting us to vote for Sir Charles Dilke at an election. Still, excepting the odours, we liked Bergen well. You never hear the mendicant whine there. Those northern people know how to work and take care of themselves, and loafers can find no living among them. I do not know whether there is so much as a beggar in the whole town. They are quiet, simple, industrious folk, who mind their own business. For politics they care little as yet, not supposing that on this road is any kind of salvation for them, though, perhaps, their time will come. They are Lutherans; universally Lutherans. It is the national

religion, and they are entirely satisfied with it. Protestant dissent is never heard of. There is a Catholic church in Bergen for the foreign sailors, but I doubt if the priests have converted a single Norwegian. They are a people already moderately well-to-do in body and mind, and do not need anything which the priests could give them. The intellectual essentials are well looked after—the schools are good, and well attended. The Bergen museum is a model on a small scale of what a local museum ought to be, an epitome of Norway itself past and present. Perhaps there is not another in Europe so excellent of its kind. In the gallery of antiquities there is the Norway of the sea kings, Runic tablets and inscriptions, chain armour, swords and clubs and battleaxes, pots of earthenware, stone knives and hammers of a still earlier age. There are the traces of their marauding expeditions, Greek and Italian statuettes, rings, chains, bracelets, and drinking-cups, one or two of these last especially curious, for glass was rare and precious when they were made or mended. The glass of one has been broken, and has been pieced with silver. These obviously were the spoils of some cruise in the Mediterranean, and there is old church plate among them which also tells its story. By the side of these are the implements of the Norsemen's other trade—fishing: specimens of nets, lines, hooks, spears and harpoons, for whale and walrus, and crossbows, the barbed arrow having a line attached to it for shooting seals. In the galleries above is a very complete collection of the Scandinavian mammalia—wolves, bears, lynxes, foxes, whales, seals, and sea-horses, every kind of fish, every bird, land or water, all perfectly well classified, labelled, and looked after. Superior persons are in charge of it, who can hold their own with the leading naturalists of France or England; and all this is maintained at modest cost by the Bergen corporation.

The houses are plain, but clean; no dirt is visible anywhere, and there is one sure sign of a desire to make life graceful. The hardiest flowers only will grow out of doors, but half the windows in the town are filled with myrtles, geraniums, or carnations. With the people themselves we had little opportunity of acquaintance; but one evening, the second after our arrival, we were on deck after dinner between ten and eleven in the evening. The sunshine was still on the hills. Though chilly to us, the air was warm to Bergen; the bay was covered with boats; family groups of citizens out enjoying themselves; music floating on the water and songs made sweet by distance. Others were anchored fishing. D—— rowed me out in the yacht's punt to a point half a mile distant. We brought up at an oar's length from some young ladies with a youth in charge of them. Some question asked as an excuse for conversation was politely answered. One of them spoke excellent English; she was a lively, clever girl, had been in Ireland, and was quick with repartee, well bred and refined. Their manners were faultless, but they fished as if they had been bred to the trade. They had oilskin aprons to save their dresses, and they pulled up their fish and handled their knives and baits like professionals.

Our first taste of Norway, notwithstanding the perfume of salt ling, was very pleasant; but we had far to go—as far as Lofoden if we could manage it—and we might not loiter. We left Bergen on the 6th with a local pilot. Trondhjem or Drontheim was the next point where we were to expect letters, and two courses lead to it—either by the open sea outside the shoals and islands, or inland by the network of fjords, longer but infinitely the most interesting, with the further merit of water perfectly smooth. We started at six in the morning and flew on rapidly among tortuous channels, now sweeping through a passage scarcely

wider than the yacht's length, now bursting into an archipelago of islets. The western coast of Norway is low and level—a barren undulating country, with the sea flowing freely through the hollows. Here and there are green patches of meadow with a few trees, where there would be a bonder's or yeoman's farm. Prettily painted lighthouses with their red roofs marked our course for us, and a girl or two would come out upon the balconies to look at us as we rushed by within a gun-shot. Eider-ducks flashed out of the water, the father of the family as usual the first to fly, and leaving wife and children to take care of themselves. Fishing-boats crossed us at intervals, and now and then a whale spouted: other signs of life there were none. Towards midday we entered the Sogne Fjord; we turned eastward towards the great mountain ranges; and, as in the fairy tale the rock opens to the Enchanted Prince, and he finds himself amidst gardens and palaces, so, as we ran on seemingly upon an impenetrable wall, cliff and crag fell apart, and we entered on what might be described as an infinite extension of Loch Lomond, save only that the mountains were far grander, the slopes more densely wooded, and that, far up, we were looking on the everlasting snow, or the green glitter of the glaciers.

On either side of us, as we steamed on, we crossed the mouths of other fjords, lateral branches precisely like the parent trunk, penetrating, as we could see upon our chart, for tens of miles. Norse history grew intelligible as we looked at them. Here were the hiding-places where the vikings, wickelings, hole-and-corner pirates, ran in with their spoils; and here was the explanation of their roving lives. The few spots where a family can sustain itself on the soil are scattered at intervals of leagues. The woods are silent and desolate; wild animals of any kind we never saw: hunting there could have been none. The bears have

increased since the farming introduced sheep; but a thousand years ago, save a few reindeer and a few grouse and ptarmigan, there was nothing which would feed either bear or man. Few warm-blooded creatures, furred or feathered, can endure the winter cold. A population cannot live by fish alone, and thus the Norsemen became rovers by necessity, and when summer came they formed in fleets and went south to seek their sustenance. The pine forests were their arsenal; their vessels were the best and fastest in the world; the water was their only road; they were boatmen and seamen by second nature, and the sea-coasts within reach of a summer outing were their natural prey.

We were bound for Trondhjem, but we intended to stop occasionally on the way, and see what deserved to be seen. We were looking for an anchoring-place where there was a likelihood of fishing; and we had seen an inlet on the chart, turning out of the Sogne, which seemed promising. At the upper end two rivers appeared to run into it out of freshwater lakes close by; conditions likely to yield salmon. It was our first experiment. A chart is flat. Imagination, unenlightened by experience, had pictured the fjord ending in level meadows, manageable streams winding through them, and, beyond, perhaps some Rydal or Grasmere lying tranquil among its hills. The pilot said that he knew the place, but could give us no description of it. Anticipation generally makes mistakes on such occasions, but never were fact and fancy more startlingly at variance. Lord Salisbury advised people to study geography on large maps. Flat charts are more convenient than models of a country in relief, but they are treacherous misleaders. Grand as the Sogne had been, the inlet into which we were now striking was grander still. The forests on the shores were denser, the slopes steeper, the cliffs and peaks soaring up in more stupendous majesty. We ran on thus for eight or ten

miles; then, turning round a projecting spur, we found ourselves in a landlocked estuary smooth as a mirror, the mountains on one side of it beautiful in evening sunlight, on the other darkening the water with their green purple shadows; at the far extremity, which was still five miles from us, a broad white line showed, instead of our 'meadow stream,' a mighty torrent pouring in a cataract over the face of a precipice into the sea.

At the foot of this fall, not three hundred yards from it (no bottom was to be found at a greater distance) we anchored half an hour later, and looked about us. We were in the heart of a primitive Norwegian valley, buried among mountains so lofty and so unbroken that no road had ever entered, or could enter, it. It was the first of many which we saw afterwards of the same type, and one description will serve for all.

We were in a circular basin at the head of the fjord. In front of us was a river as large as the Clyde rushing out of a chasm a thousand feet above us, and plunging down in boiling foam. Above this chasm, and inaccessible, was one of the lakes which we had seen on the chart, and in which we had expected to catch salmon. The mountains round were, as usual, covered with wood. At the foot of the fall, and worked by part of it, was a large saw-mill with its adjoining sheds and buildings. The pines were cut as they were wanted, floated to the mill and made into planks, vessels coming at intervals to take them away. The Norwegians are accused of wasting their forests with these mills. We could see no signs of it. In the first place, the sides of the fjords are so steep that the trees can be got at only in comparatively few places. When they can be got at, there is no excessive destruction; more pines are annually swept away by avalanches than are consumed by all the mills in Norway; and the quantity is so enor-

mous that the amount which men can use is no more likely to exhaust it than the Loch Fyne fishermen are likely to exhaust the herring shoals.

On the other side of the basin where we lay was the domain of the owner of the mill. Though the fjord ended, the great ravine in which it was formed stretched, as we could see, a couple of miles further, but had been blocked by a moraine. The moraines, being formed of loose soil and stones deposited by ice in the glacial period, are available for cultivation, and are indeed excellent land. There were forty or fifty acres of grass laid up for hay, a few acres of potatoes, a red-roofed sunny farmhouse with large outbuildings, carts and horses moving about, poultry crowing, cattle grazing, a boathouse and platform where a couple of lighters were unloading. Here was the house of a substantial, prosperous farmer. His nearest neighbour must have been twelve miles from him. He, his children, and farm-servants were the sole occupants of the valley. The saw-mill was theirs; the boats were theirs; their own hands supplied everything that was wanted. They were their own carpenters, smiths, masons, and glaziers; they sheared their own sheep, spun and dyed their own wool, wove their own cloth, and cut and sewed their own dresses. It was a true specimen of primitive Norwegian life complete in itself—of peaceful, quiet, self-sufficient, prosperous industry.

The snake that spoiled Paradise had doubtless found its way into Nord Gulen (so our valley was named) as into other places, but a softer, sweeter-looking spot we had none of us ever seen. It was seven in the evening when we anchored; a skiff came off, rowed by a couple of plain stout girls with offers of eggs and milk. Fishing-lines were brought out as soon as the anchor was down. The surface water was fresh, and icy cold as coming out of the

near glaciers; but it was salt a few fathoms down, and almost immediately we had a basket of dabs and whiting.

After dinner, at nine o'clock, with the sun still shining, D—— and I went ashore with our trout rods. We climbed the moraine, and a narrow lake lay spread out before us, perfectly still, the sides steep, in many places precipitous, trees growing wherever a root could strike. The lake was three miles long, and seemed to end against the foot of a range of mountains 5,000 feet high, the peaks of which, thickly covered with snow, were flushed with the crimson light of the evening. The surface of the water was spotted with rings where the trout were rising. One of the farmer's boys, who had followed us, offered his boat. It was of native manufacture, and not particularly watertight, but we stowed ourselves, one in the bow and the other at the stern. The boy had never seen such rods as ours; he looked incredulously at them, and still more at our flies; but he rowed us to the top of the lake, where a river came down out of the snow-mountain, finishing its descent with a leap over a cliff. Here he told us there were trout if we could catch them; and he took us deliberately into the spray of the waterfall, not understanding, till we were nearly wet through, that we had any objection to it. As the evening went on the scene became every minute grander and more glorious. The sunset colours deepened; a crag just over us, 2,000 feet high, stood out clear and sharp against the sky. We stayed for two or three hours, idly throwing our flies and catching a few trout no longer than our hands, thereby confirming our friend's impression of our inefficiency. At midnight we were in the yacht again—midnight, and it was like a night in England at the end of June five minutes after sunset.

This was our first experience of a Norway fjord, and for myself I would have been content to go no further; have

studied in detail the exquisite beauty which was round us; have made friends with the owner and his household, and found out what they made of their existence under such conditions. There in epitome I should have been seeing Norway and the Norwegians. It was no Arcadia of piping shepherds. In the summer the young men are away at the mountain farms, high grazing ground underneath the snow-line. The women work with their brothers and husbands, and weave and make the clothes. They dress plainly, but with good taste, with modest embroidery; a handsome bag hangs at the waist of the housewife. There is reading, too, and scholarship. A boy met us on a pathway, and spoke to us in English. We asked him when he had been in England. He had never been beyond his own valley; in the long winter evenings he had taught himself with an English grammar. No wonder with such ready adaptabilities the Norwegians make the best of emigrants. The overflow of population which once ejected itself in such rude fashion on Normandy and England now finds its way to the United States, and no incomers are more welcome there.

But a yacht is for movement and change. We were to start again at noon the next day. The morning was hot and bright. While the engineer was getting up steam, we rowed to the foot of the great fall. I had my small trout rod with me, and trolled a salmon fly on the chance. There were no salmon there, but we saw brown trout rising; so I tried the universal favourites—a March brown and a red spinner—and in a moment had a fish that bent the rod double. Another followed, and another, and then I lost a large one. I passed the rod to D——, in whose hands it did still better service. In an hour we had a basket of trout that would have done credit to an English chalk stream. The largest was nearly three

pounds weight, admirably grown, and pink; fattened, I suppose, on the mussels which paved the bottom of the rapids. We were off immediately after, still guided to a new point by the chart, but not in this instance by the chart only. There was a spot which had been discovered the year before by the Duke of ——, of which we had a vague description. We had a log on board which had been kept by the Duke's mate, in which he had recorded many curious experiences; among the rest an adventure at a certain lake not very far from where we were. The Duke had been successful there, and his lady had been very nearly successful. 'We had grief yesterday,' the mate wrote, 'her Grace losing a twelve-pound salmon which she had caught on her little line, and just as they were going to hook it, it went off, and we were very sorry.' The grief went deep, it seemed, for the next day the crew were reported as only 'being as well as could be expected after so melancholy an accident.' We determined to find the place, and, if possible, avenge her Grace. We crossed the Sogne and went up into the Nord Fjord—of all the fjords the most beautiful; for on either side there are low terraces of land left by glacier action, and more signs of culture and human habitations. After running for fifty miles, we turned into an inlet corresponding tolerably with the Duke's directions, and in another half-hour we were again in a mountain basin like that which we had left in the morning. The cataracts were in their glory, the day having been warm for a wonder. I counted seventeen all close about us when we anchored, any one of which would have made the fortune of a Scotch hotel, and would have been celebrated by Mr. Murray in pages of passionate eloquence. But Strömen or 'the Streams,' as the place was called, was less solitary than Nord Gulen. There was a large farm on one side of us There was a cluster of

houses at the mouth of a river, half a mile from it. Above the village was a lake, and at the head of the lake an establishment of saw-mills. A gun-shot from where we lay, on a rocky knoll, was a white wooden church, the Sunday meeting-place of the neighbourhood; boats coming to it from twenty miles round bringing families in their bright Sunday attire. Roads there were none. To have made a league of road among such rocks and precipices would have cost the State a year's revenue. But the water was the best of approaches, and boats the cheapest of carriages. We called on the chief proprietor to ask for leave to fish in the lake. It was granted with the readiest courtesy; but the Norsemen are proud in their way, and do not like the Englishman's habit of treating all the world as if it belonged to him. The low meadows round his house were bright with flowers: two kinds of wild geranium, an exquisite variety of harebell, sea-pride, pansies, violets, and the great pinguicola. Among the rocks were foxgloves in full splendour, and wild roses just coming into flower. The roses alone of the Norway flora disappointed me; the leaves are large, dark, and handsome; the flower is insignificant, and falls to pieces within an hour of its opening. We were satisfied that we were on the right spot. The church stood on a peninsula, the neck of which immediately adjoined our anchorage. Behind it was the lake which had been the scene of the Duchess's misfortune. We did not repeat our midnight experiment. We waited for a leisurely breakfast. Five of the crew then carried the yacht's cutter through fifty yards of bushes; and we were on the edge of the lake itself, which, like all these inland waters, was glassy, still, deep, and overhung with precipices. The owner had suggested to us that there were bears among them, which we might kill if we pleased, as they had just eaten seven of his sheep. So little intention

had we of shooting bears that we had not brought rifle or even gun with us. Our one idea was to catch the Duchess's twelve-pound salmon, or, if not that one, at least another of his kindred.

In a strange lake it is well always to try first with spinning tackle, a bait trolled with a long line from the stern of a boat rowed slowly. It will tell you if there are fish to be caught; it will find out for you where the fish most haunt, if there are any. We had a curious experience of the value of this method on a later occasion, and on one of our failures. We had found a lake joined to an arm of a fjord by a hundred yards only of clear running water. We felt certain of finding salmon there, and if we had begun with flies we might have fished all day and have caught nothing. Instead of this we began to spin. In five minutes we had a run; we watched eagerly to see what we had got. It was a whiting pollock. We went on. We hooked a heavy fish. We assured ourselves that now we had at least a trout. It turned out to be a cod. The sea fish, we found, ran freely into the fresh water, and had chased trout and salmon completely out. At Strömen we were in better luck. We started with phantom minnows on traces of strong single gut, forty yards of line, and forty more in reserve on the reel. Two men rowed us up the shore an oar's length from the rocks. Something soon struck me. The reel flew round, the line spun out. In the wake of the boat there was a white flash, as a fish sprang into the air. Was it the Duchess's salmon? It was very like it, any way; and if we had lost him, it would have been entered down as a salmon. It proved, however, to be no salmon, but a sea trout, and such a sea trout as we had never seen; not a bull trout, not a peel, not a Welsh sewin, or Irish white trout, but a Norwegian, of a kind of its own, different from all of them. This was the first of many

which followed, of sizes varying from three pounds to the twelve pounds which the mate had recorded; fine, bold, fighting fish, good to look at, good to catch, and as good to eat when we tried them. Finally, in the shallower water, at the upper end, a fish took me, which from its movements was something else, and proved to be a large char, like what they take in Derwentwater, only four times the weight. Looking carefully at the water we saw more char swimming leisurely near the surface, taking flies. We dropped our spinning tackle, and took our fly rods; and presently we were pulling in char, the blood royal of the salmonidæ, the elect of all the finned children of the fresh water, as if they had been so many Thames chub.

What need to talk more of fish? The mate's log had guided us well. We caught enough and to spare, and her Grace's wrongs were avenged sufficiently. We landed for our frugal luncheon—dry biscuits and a whisky flask—but we sate in a bed of whortleberries, purple with ripe fruit, by a cascade which ran down out of a snow-field. Horace would have invited his dearest friend to share in such a banquet.

The next day was Sunday. The sight of the boats coming from all quarters to church was very pretty. Fifteen hundred people at least must have collected. I attended the service, but could make little of it. I could follow the hymns with a book; but copies of the Liturgy, though printed, are not provided for general use, and are reserved to the clergy. The faces of the men were extremely interesting. There was little in them to suggest the old freebooter. They were mild and gentle-looking, with fair skins, fair hair, and light eyes, grey or blue. The expression was sensible and collected, but with nothing about it specially adventurous or daring. The women, in fact, were more striking than their husbands. There was

a steady strength in their features which implied humour underneath. Two girls, I suppose sisters, reminded me of Mrs. Gaskell. With the Lutheran, Sunday afternoon is a holiday. A yacht in such a place was a curiosity, and a fleet of boats surrounded us. Such as liked came on board and looked about them. They were well bred, and showed no foolish surprise. One old dame, indeed, being taken down into the ladies' cabin, did find it too much for her. She dropped down and kissed the carpet. One of our party wondered afterwards whether there was any chance of the Norwegians attaining a higher civilisation. I asked her to define civilisation. Did industry, skill, energy, sufficient food and raiment, sound practical education, and piety which believes without asking questions, constitute civilisation; and would luxury, newspapers, and mechanics' institutes mean a higher civilisation? The old question must first be answered, What is the real purpose of human life?

At Strömen, too, we could not linger; we stopped a few hours at Daviken on our way north, a considerable place for Norway, on the Nord Fjord. There is a bishop, I believe, belonging to it, but him we did not see. We called at the parsonage and found the pastor's wife and children. The pastor himself came on board afterwards—a handsome man of sixty-seven, with a broad, full forehead, large nose, and straight grizzled hair. He spoke English, and would have spoken Latin if we had ourselves been equal to it. He had read much English literature, and was cultivated above the level of our own average country clergy. His parish was thirty miles long on both sides of the fjord. He had several churches, to all of which he attended in turn, with boats in summer, and occasionally perhaps with the ice in winter. We did not ask his salary; it was doubtless small, but sufficient. He had a school under him which he said

was well attended. The master, who had a state certificate, was allowed 25*l.* a year, on which he was able to maintain himself. We could not afford time to see more of this gentleman, however. We were impatient for Trondhjem; the engineer wanted coals; we wanted our letters and newspapers; and the steward wanted a washerwoman. On our way up, too, we had arranged to give a day or two to Romsdal, Rolf the Ganger's country. On an island in Romsdal Fjord the ruins can still be seen of Rolf's Castle. It was there that Rolf, or Rollo as we call him, set out with his comrades to conquer Normandy, and produce the chivalry who fought at Hastings and organised feudal England. This was not to be missed; and as little, a visit which we had promised to a descendant of one of those Normans, a distinguished Tory member of the House of Commons, and lord of half an English county who had bought an estate in these parts, with a salmon river, and had built himself a house there.

Romsdal, independent of its antiquarian interest, is geologically the most remarkable place which we saw in Norway. The fjord expands into a wide estuary or inland lake, into which many valleys open and several large streams discharge themselves. Romsdal proper was once evidently itself a continuation of the Great Fjord. The mountains on each side of it are peculiarly magnificent. On the left Romsdal's Horn shoots up into the sky, a huge peak which no one at that time had ever climbed, and will try the mettle of the Alpine Club when they have conquered Switzerland. On the right is a precipitous wall of cliffs and crags as high and bold as the Horn itself. The upper end of the valley which divides them terminates in a narrow fissure, through which a river thunders down that carries the water of the great central icefield into the valley. From thence it finds its way into the fjord, running through the glen itself,

which is seven or eight miles long, two miles wide, and richly cultivated and wooded. From the sea the appearance of the shore is most singular. It is laid out in level grassy terraces, stretching all round the bay, rising in tiers one above the other, so smooth, so even, so nicely scarfed, that the imagination can hardly be persuaded that they are not the work of human engineers. But under water the formation is the same. At one moment you are in twenty fathoms, the next in forty, the next your cable will find no bottom; and it is as certain as any conclusion on such subjects can be, that long ago, long ages before Rolf, and Knut, and the Vikings, the main fjord was blocked with ice; that while the ice barrier was still standing, and the valleys behind it were freshwater lakes, the rivers gradually filled them with a *débris* of stone and soil. Each level terrace was once a lake bottom. The ice broke or melted away at intervals. The water was lowered suddenly forty or fifty feet, and the ground lately covered was left bare as the ice receded.

We found our Englishman. His house is under the Horn at the bend of the valley, where the ancient fjord must have ended. It stands in a green open meadow, approached through alder and birch woods, the first cataract where the snow-water plunges through the great chasm being in sight of the windows, and half-a-dozen inimitable salmon pools within a few minutes' walk. The house itself was simple enough, made of pine wood entirely, as the Norway houses always are, and painted white. It contained some half-dozen rooms, furnished in the plainest English style, the summer-house of a sportsman who is tired of luxury, and finds the absence of it an agreeable exchange. A man cannot be always catching salmon, even in Norway, and a smattering of science and natural history would be a serviceable equipment in a scene where there

are so many curious objects worth attending to. Our friend's tastes, however, did not lie in that direction. His shelves were full of yellow-backed novels—French, English, and German. His table was covered with the everlasting 'Saturday Review,' 'Pall Mall Gazette,' 'Times,' and 'Standard.' I think he suspected science as a part of modern Liberalism; for he was a Tory of the Tories, a man with whom the destinies had dealt kindly, in whose eyes therefore all existing arrangements were as they should be, and those who wished to meddle with them were enemies of the human race. He was sad and sorrowful. The world was not moving to his mind, and he spoke as if he was *ultimus Romanorum*. But if an aristocrat, he was an aristocrat of the best type—princely in his thoughts, princely in his habits, princely even in his salmon fishing. The pools in the river being divided by difficult rapids, he had a boat and a boatman for each. The sport was ample but uniform. There was an ice cellar under the house where we saw half-a-dozen great salmon lying which had been caught in the morning. One salmon behaves much like another; and after one has caught four or five, and when one knows that one can catch as many more as one wishes, impatient people might find the occupation monotonous. Happily there was a faint element of uncertainty still left. It was possible to fail even in the Romsdal. We were ourselves launched in boats in different pools at the risk of our lives to try our hands; we worked diligently for a couple of hours, and I at least moved not so much as a fin. It was more entertaining a great deal to listen to our host as he declaimed upon the iniquities of our present Radical chief. Politics, like religion, are matters of faith on which reason says as little as possible. One passionate belief is an antidote to another. It is impossible to continue to believe enthusiastically in a creed

which a fellow-mortal with as much sense as oneself denies and execrates, and the collision of opinion produces the prudent scepticism which in most matters is the least mischievous frame of mind.

Here, too, in these pleasant surroundings we would gladly have loitered for a day or two; but the steward was clamorous over his dirty linen, and it was not to be. My last impressions of Romsdal fell into the form of a few doggrel verses, an indulgence on which I rarely venture, and which for once, therefore, may be pardoned.

ROMSDAL FJORD.

July 11, 1881.

So this, then, was the Rovers' nest,
And here the chiefs were bred,
Who broke the drowsy Saxon's rest
And scared him in his bed.

The north wind blew, the ship sped fast,
Loud cheered the Corsair crew,
And wild and free above the mast
The Raven standard flew.

Sail south, sail south, there lies the land
Where the yellow corn is growing;
The spoil is for the warrior's hand,
The serf may have the sowing.

Let cowards make their parchment laws,
To guard their treasured hoards;
The steel shall plead the Rovers' cause,
Their title deeds their swords.

The Raven still o'er Romsdal's peaks
Is soaring as of yore,
But Viking's call in cove or creek
Calm Romsdal hears no more.

Long ages now beneath the soil
The Ganger has been lying,
In Romsdal's bay his quiet toil
The fisherman is plying.

The English earl sails idly by,
And from his deck would trace,
With curious antiquarian eye,
The cradle of his race.

With time and tide we change and change,
Yet still the world is young,
Still free the proudest spirits range,
The prize is for the strong.

We deem it chief of glorious things
In parliaments to shine,
That orators are modern kings,
And only not divine.

But men will yet be ruled by men,
Though talk may have its day,
And other Rolfs will rise again
To sweep the rogues away.

Trondhjem, on which our intentions had been so long fixed, was reached at last. The weather had grown cold again, cold with cataracts of rain. Let no one go to Norway even in the dog-days without a winter wardrobe. The sea-water in our baths was at 47°; we had fires in the cabin stove, and could not warm ourselves; we shivered under four blankets in our berths. The mountains were buried in clouds, and the landscape was reduced to a dull grey mist; but the worst of weathers will serve for reading letters, laying in coal, and wandering about a town.

Trondhjem ought to have been interesting. It was the capital of the old Norse kings. There reigned the Olafs.

It lies half-way up the Norway coast in the very centre of the kingdom, on a broad landlocked bay. The situation was chosen for its strength; for a deep river all but surrounds the peninsula on which the town is built, and on the land side it must have been impregnable. The country behind it is exceptionally fertile, and is covered over with thriving farms; but streets and shops are wearisome, and even the cathedral did not tempt us to pay it more than a second visit. It is a stern solid piece of building; early Norman in type, with doors, windows, and arches of zigzag pattern. It had fallen out of repair and was now being restored by the State; hundreds of workmen were busy chipping and hammering, and were doing their business so well that the new work can hardly be distinguished from the old. But Catholic Christianity never seems to have got any hearty hold on Norway. St. Olaf thrust it upon the people at the sword's point, but their imaginations remained heathen till the Reformation gave them a creed which they could believe. I could find but few tombs in the cathedral. I inquired where the old kings and chiefs were buried, and no one could tell me. I found, in fact, that they had usually come to an end in some sea-battle, and had found their graves in their own element. Olaf Tryggveson went down, the last survivor in the last ship of his fleet, the rays of the sunset flashing on his armour as the waves closed over him. St. Olaf died in the same way. The absence of monumental stones or figures in the great metropolitan church of Norway is strange, sad, and impressive.

The town being exhausted, we drove a few miles out of it to see a foss, one of the grandest in the country. We said 'Oh!' to it, as Wolfe Tone did to Grattan. But waterfalls had become too common with us, and, in fact, the excitement about them has always seemed exaggerated to me. I

was staying once in a house in the north of New York State when a gentleman came in fresh from Niagara, and poured out his astonishment over the enormous mass of water falling into the caldron below. 'Why is it astonishing?' asked a Yankee who was present. 'Why shouldn't the water fall? The astonishing thing would be if it didn't fall.'

In short, we left the washerwoman in possession of the linen, which we could return and pick up when it was done, and we steamed away to examine the great Trondhjem Fjord; fishing and making bad sketches as the weather would allow. The weather generally allowed us to do very little, and drove us upon our books, which we could have read as well in our rooms at home. I had brought the 'Elective Affinities' with me. I had not read it for thirty years. Then it had seemed to me the wisest of all didactic works of fiction. 'Unconscious cerebration,' as Dr. Carpenter calls it, when I read the book again, had revolutionised my principles of judgment. I could still recognise the moral purpose. There are tendencies in human nature, like the chemical properties of material substances, which will claim possession of you, and even appear to have a moral right over you. But if you yield you will be destroyed. You can command yourself, and you must. Very true, very excellent; and set forth with Goethe's greatest power of fascination; but I found myself agreeing with the rest of the world that it was a monstrous book after all. To put the taste out I tried Seneca, but I scarcely improved matters. Seneca's fame as a moralist and philosopher was due, perhaps, in the first instance, to his position about the Court, and to his enormous wealth. A little merit passes for a great deal when it is framed in gold, and once established it would retain its reputation, from the natural liking of men for virtuous cant. Those

lectures to Lucilius on the beauty of poverty from the greatest money-lender and usurer in the Empire! Lucilius is to practise voluntary hardships, is to live at intervals on beggars' fare, and sleep on beggars' pallets, that he may sympathise in the sufferings of mortality and be independent of outward things. If Seneca meant all this, why did he squeeze five millions of our money out of the provinces with loans and contracts? He was barren as the Sahara to me. Not a green spot could I find, not a single genial honest thought, in all the four volumes with which I had encumbered myself. His finest periods rang hollow like brass sovereigns. The rain would not stop, so we agreed to defy the rain and to fish in spite of it. We had the fjord before us for a week, and we landed wherever we could hear of lake or river. For twelve hours together the waterspout would come down upon us; we staggered about in thickest woollen, with mackintoshes and india-rubber boots. With flapped oilskin hats we should have been waterproof, but with one of these I was unprovided; and, in spite of collars and woollen wrappers, the water would find its way down my neck till there was nothing dry left about me but the feet. Clothes grow heavy under such conditions; we had to take our lightest rods with us, and now and then came to grief. I was fishing alone one day in a broad rocky stream fringed with alder bushes, dragging my landing-net with me. At an open spot where there was a likely run within reach I had caught a four-pound sea trout. I threw again; a larger fish rose and carried off my fly. I mounted a 'doctor,' blue and silver, on the strongest casting line in my book, and on the second cast a salmon came. The river in the middle was running like a mill-sluice. I could not follow along the bank on account of the trees; my only hope was to hold on and drag the monster into the slack water under the shore.

My poor little rod did its best, but its best was not enough; the salmon forced his way into the waves, round went the reel, off flew the line to the last inch, and then came the inevitable catastrophe. A white streak flashed wildly into the air, the rod straightened out, the line came home, and my salmon and my bright doctor sped away together to the sea.

We were none the worse for our wettings. Each evening we came home dripping and draggled. A degree or two more of cold would have turned the rain into snow. Yet it signified nothing. We brought back our basketfuls of trout, and the Norwegian trout are the best in the world. We anchored one evening in a chasm with the mountain walls rising in precipices on both sides. The next morning as I was laying in my berth I heard a conversation between the steward and the captain. The captain asked the orders for the day; the steward answered (he was the wit of the ship), 'Orders are to stretch an awning over the fjord that his lordship may fish.'

But the weather so far beat us that we were obliged to abandon Lofoden. We were now at the end of July, and it was not likely to mend, so we determined to turn about and spend the rest of our time in the large fjords of South Norway. Trondhjem had been our furthest point; we could not coal there after all, so we had to make for Christiansund on the way. I was not sorry for it, for Christiansund is a curious little bustling place, and worth seeing. It is the headquarters of the North Sea fishing trade near the open ocean, and the harbour is formed by three or four islands divided by extremely narrow channels, with a deep roomy basin in the middle of them. One of our crew was ill, and had to be taken for two or three days to the hospital. The arrangements seemed excellent, as every public department is in Norway. The town was pretty. The Norwegians

dress plainly; but they like bright colours for their houses, and the red-tiled roofs and blue and yellow painted fronts looked pleasant after our clouds of mist.

The climate from the proximity of the ocean is said to be mild for its latitude. The snow, we were told, lay up to the lower windows through the winter, but that went for nothing. There were stocks and columbines in the gardens; there were ripe gooseberries and red currants and pink thorn and laburnum in flower. The harbour was full of fishing smacks, like Brixham trawlers, only rather more old-fashioned. Gay steam-ferry boats rushed about from island to island; large ships were loading; well-dressed strangers were in the streets and shops; an English yacht had come like ourselves to take in coal, and was moored side by side with us. There are fewer people in the world than we imagine, and we fall on old acquaintances when we least expect them. The once beautiful —— was on board whom I had known forty-five years before. She had married a distinguished engineer, who was out for his holiday.

We stayed at Christiansund or in the neighbourhood till our sick man was recovered, and then followed (under better auspices as regarded weather) ten days of scenery hunting which need not be described. We went to Sondal, Lærdal, Nordal, and I don't know how many 'dals,' all famous places in their way, but with a uniformity of variety which becomes tedious in a story. One only noticeable feature I observed about the sheds and poorer houses in these out-of-the-way districts. They lay turf sods over the roofs, which become thick masses of vegetation; and on a single cottage roof you may see half-a-dozen trees growing ten or fifteen feet high. For lakes and mountains, however beautiful, the appetite becomes soon satiated. They please, but they cease to excite; and there is something artificial in the modern enthusiasm for landscapes. Velasquez or

Rubens could appreciate a fine effect of scenery as well as Turner or Stanfield; but with them it was a framework, subordinate to some human interest in the centre of the picture. I suppose it is because man in these democratic days has for a time ceased to touch the imagination that our poets and artists are driven back upon rocks and rivers and trees and skies; but the eclipse can only be temporary, and I confess, for myself, that, sublime as the fjords were, the saw-mills and farmhouses and fishing-boats, and the patient, industrious people wresting a wholesome living out of that stern environment, affected me very much more nearly. I cannot except even the Geiranger, as tremendous a piece of natural architecture as exists in the globe. The fjord in the Geiranger is a quarter of a mile wide and 600 fathoms deep. The walls of it are in most places not figuratively, but literally, precipices, and the patch of sky above your head seems to narrow as you look up. I hope I was duly impressed with the wonder of this; but even here there was something which impressed me more, and that was the singular haymaking which was going on. The Norwegians depend for their existence on their sheep and cattle. Every particle of grass available for hay is secured; and grass, peculiarly nutritious, often grows on the high ridges 2,000 feet up. This they save as they can, and they have original ways of doing it. In the Geiranger it is tied tightly in bundles and flung over the cliffs to be gathered up in boats below. But science, too, is making its way in this northern wilderness. The farmhouses, for shelter's sake, are always at the bottom of valleys, and are generally near the sea. At one of our anchorages, shut in as usual among the mountains, we observed one evening from the deck what looked like a troop of green goats skipping and bounding down the cliffs. We discovered through a binocular that they were bundles of hay. The clever bönder had

carried up a wire, like a telegraph wire, from his courtyard to a projecting point of mountain: on this ran iron rings as travellers which brought the grass directly to his door.

Twice only in our wanderings we had fallen in with our tourist countrymen: once at Lærdal, where a high road comes down to a pier, and is met there by a corresponding steamer; the second time coming down from the Geiranger, when we passed a boat with two ladies and a gentleman, English evidently, the gentleman touching his hat to the Yacht Club flag as we went by. Strange and pleasant the short glimpse of English faces in that wild chasm! But we were plunged into the very middle of our countrymen at the last spot in which we went in search of the picturesque —a spot worth a few words as by far the most regularly beautiful of all the places which we visited. At the head of one of the long inlets which runs south, I think, out of the Hardanger Fjord (but our rapid movements were confusing) stands Odde, once a holy place in Scandinavian mythological history. There is another Odde in Iceland, also sacred—I suppose Odin had something to do with it. The Odde Fjord is itself twenty miles long, and combines the softest and grandest aspects of Norwegian scenery. The shores are exceptionally well cultivated, richer than any which we had seen. Every half-mile some pretty farm-house was shining red through clumps of trees, the many cattle-sheds speaking for the wealth of the owner. Above, through the rifts of higher ranges you catch a sight of the Central Icefield glaciér streaming over among the broken chasms and melting into waterfalls. At Odde itself there is an extensive tract of fertile soil on the slope of a vast moraine, which stretches completely across the broad valley. On the sea at the landing-place is a large church and two considerable hotels, which were thronged with visitors. A broad road excellently engineered leads down to it, and we

found a staff of English-speaking guides whose services we did not require. We had seen much of the ice action elsewhere, but the performances of it at Odde were more wonderful even than at Romsdal. The moraine is perhaps 450 feet high; the road winds up the side of it among enormous granite boulders, many of them weighing thousands of tons, which the ice has tossed about like pebble-stones. On reaching the crest you see a lake a quarter of a mile off; but before you come to it you cross some level fields, very rich to look at, and with patches of white-heart cherry-trees scattered about, the fruit, when we came there at the end of August, being actually ripe and extremely good. These fields were the old lake bottom; but the river has cut a dyke for itself through the top of the morain , and the lake has gone down some twenty feet, leaving them dry.

The weather (penitent, perhaps, for having so long persecuted us) was in a better humour. Our days at Odde were warm and without a cloud, and we spent them chiefly by the lake, which was soft as Windermere. We had come into a land of fruit; not cherries only, but wild raspberries and strawberries were offered us in leaves by the girls on the road. The road itself followed the lake margin, among softly rounded and wooded hills, the great mountains out of sight behind them, save only in one spot where, through a gorge, you looked straight up to the eternal snow-field, from which a vast glacier descended almost into the lake itself, the ice imitating precisely the form of falling water, crushing its way among the rocks, parting in two where it met a projecting crag, and uniting again behind it, seeming even to heave and toss in angry waves of foam.

From this glacier the lake was chiefly fed, and was blue, like skimmed milk, in consequence. We walked along it for several miles. Fishing seemed hopeless in water of

such a texture. As we turned a corner two carriages dashed by us with some young men and dogs and guns—cockneys out for their holiday. 'Any sport, sir?' one of them shouted to me, seeing a rod in my hand, in the cheerful familiar tone which assumed that sport must be the first and only object which one could have in such a place. They passed on to the hotel, and the presence of so many of our own countrymen was inclining us to cut short our own stay. Some of the party, however, wished to inspect the glacier. We were ourselves assured that there were salmon in the lake, which, in spite of the colour, could be caught there. It was the last opportunity which we should have, as after Odde our next move was to be Christiania. So we agreed to take one more day there and make the most of it. We got two native boats, and started to seek adventures. Alas! we had the loveliest views; but the blue waters of Odde, however fair to look upon, proved as ill to fish in as at the first sight of them we were assured they must be. Our phantom minnows could not be seen three inches off, and the stories told us we concluded to be fables invented for the tourists. I, for my own part, had gone to the furthest extremity of the lake, where it ended in a valley like Borrodale. I was being rowed listlessly back, having laid aside my tackle, and wishing that I could talk to my old boatman, who looked as if all the stories of the Edda were inside him, when my eye was suddenly caught by a cascade coming down out of a ravine into the lake which had not been bred in the glaciers, and was as limpid as the Itchen itself. At the mouth of this it was just possible that there might be a char or something with fins that could see to rise. It was my duty to do what I could for the yacht's cuisine. I put together my little trout rod for a last attempt, and made my boatman row me over to it. The clear water was not mixing with the blue, but

pushing its way through the milky masses, which were eddying and rolling as if they were oil. In a moment I had caught a sea trout. Immediately after I caught a second, and soon a basketful. They had been attracted by the purer liquid, and were gathered there in a shoal. They were lying with their noses up the stream at the furthest point to which they could go. I got two or three, and those the largest, by throwing my fly against the rocks exactly at the fall. D—— came afterwards and caught more and bigger fish than I did; and our sport, which indeed we had taken as it came without specially seeking for it, was brought to a good end. The end of August was come, and with it the period of our stay in the fjords. We had still to see Christiania, and had no time to lose. But of all the bits of pure natural loveliness which we had fallen in with, Odde and its blue lake, and glacier, and cherry orchards, and wild strawberries has left the fairest impression; perhaps, however, only because it was the last, for we were going home; and they say that when a man dies, the last image which he has seen is photographed on his retina.

But now away. The smoke pours through the funnel. The engine is snorting like an impatient horse. The quick rattle of the cable says that the anchor is off the ground. We were off, and had done with fjords. The inner passages would serve no longer; we had to make for the open sea once more to round the foot of the peninsula. It is at no time the softest of voyages. The North Sea is not the home of calm sunsets and light-breathing zephyrs, and it gave us a taste of its quality, which, after our long sojourn in smooth water, was rather startling. If the wind and sea are ever wilder than we found them in those latitudes, I have no desire to be present at the exhibition. We fought the storm for twenty-four hours, and were then driven for

refuge into a roadstead at the southern extremity of Norway, near Mandal. The neighbourhood was interesting, if we had known it, for at Mandal Mary Stuart's Earl of Bothwell was imprisoned when he escaped from the Orkneys to Denmark. The dungeon where he was confined is still to be seen, and as the Earl was an exceptional villain, the authentic evidence of eyesight that he had spent an uncomfortable time in his exile would not have been unwelcome. But we discovered what we had lost when it was too late to profit by our information. We amused ourselves by wandering on shore and observing the effect of the change of latitude on vegetation. We found the holly thriving, of which in the north we had not seen a trace, and the hazel bushes had ripe nuts on them. There was still a high sea the next day; but we made thirty miles along the coast to Arendal, an advanced thriving town of modern aspect built in a sheltered harbour, with broad quays, fine buildings, and a gay parade. It was almost dark when we entered; and the brilliant lights and moving crowds and carriages formed a singular contrast to the unfinished scenes of unregenerate nature which we had just left. The Norse nature, too, hard and rugged as it may be, cannot resist the effect of its occupations. Aristotle observes that busy sea towns are always democratic. Norway generally, though Republican, is intensely Conservative. The landowners, who elect most of the representatives, walk in the ways of their fathers, and have the strongest objection to new ideas. Arendal, I was told, sends to Parliament an eloquent young Radical, the admired of all the newspapers. There is, I believe,[1] no present likelihood that he will bring about a revolution. But there is no knowing when the king is an absentee. We spent

[1] Written in 1881. The movement for separation from Sweden has advanced rapidly in the last ten years.

one night at Arendal. In the morning the storm had left us, and before sunset we were at anchor at Christiania. It was Sunday. The weather was warm, the water smooth, the woody islands which surround and shelter the anchorage were glowing in gold and crimson. Christiania, a city of domes and steeples, lay before us with its fleets of steamers and crowded shipping. Hundreds of tiny yachts and pleasure-boats were glancing round us. There is no sour Sabbatarianism in Norway. One of the islands is a kind of Cremorne. When night fell the music of the city band came fitfully across the water; blue lights blazed and rockets flashed into the sky with their flights of crimson stars. It was a scene which we had not expected in these northern regions; but life can have its enjoyments even above the sixtieth parallel.

There is much to be seen in Christiania. There is a Parliament house and a royal palace, and picture galleries and botanical gardens, and a museum of antiquities, and shops where articles of native workmanship can be bought by Englishmen at three times their value, and ancient swords and battleaxes, and drinking-horns and rings and necklaces, genuine, at present, for all I know to the contrary, but capable of imitation, and likely in these days of progress to be speedily imitated. If the Holy Coat of Trèves has been multiplied by ten, why should there not be ten swords of Olaf Tryggveson? But all these things are written of in the handbook of Mr. Murray, where the curious can read of them. One real wonder we saw and saw again at Christiania, and could not satisfy ourselves with seeing; and with an account of this I shall end. It was a Viking's ship; an authentic vessel in which, while Norway was still heathen, before St. Olaf drilled his people into Christianity with sword and gallows, a Norse chief and his crew had travelled these same waters, and in which, when he died,

he had been laid to rest. It had been closed in with peat, which had preserved the timbers. It had been recovered almost entire—the vessel itself, the oars, the boats, the remnants of the cordage, even down to the copper caldron in which he and his men had cooked their dinners; the names, the age, the character of them all buried in the soil, but the proof surviving that they had been the contemporaries and countrymen of the 'Danes' who drove the English Alfred into the marshes of Somersetshire.

Our yacht's company were as eager to see this extraordinary relic as ourselves. We went in a body, and never tired of going. It had been found fifty miles away, had been brought to Christiania, and had been given in charge to the University. A solid weatherproof shed had been built for it, where we could study its structure at our leisure.

The first thing that struck us all was the beauty of the model, as little resembling the old drawings of Norse or Saxon ships as the figures which do duty there as men resemble human beings. White, of Cowes, could not build a vessel with finer lines, or offering less resistance to the water. She was eighty feet long, and seventeen and a half feet beam. She may have drawn three feet, scarcely more, when her whole complement was on board. She was pierced for thirty-two oars, and you could see the marks on the side of the rowlocks where the oars had worn the timber. She had a single mast, stepped in the solid trunk of a tree which had been laid along the keel. The stump of it was still in the socket. Her knee timbers were strong; but her planks were unexpectedly slight, scarcely more than half an inch thick. They had been formed by careful splitting; there was no sign of the action of a saw, and the ends of them had been trimmed off by the axe. They had been set on and fastened with iron nails, and the seams had been carefully caulked. Deck she had none—a

level floor a couple of feet below the gunwale ran from stem to stern. The shields of the crew formed a bulwark, and it was easy to see where they had been fixed. Evidently, therefore, she had been a war-ship; built for fighting, not for carrying cargoes. But there was no shelter, and could have been none; no covered forecastle, no stern cabin. She stood right open fore and aft to wind and waves; and though she would have been buoyant in a sea-way, and in the heaviest gale would have shipped little water, even Norsemen could not have been made of such impenetrable stuff that they would have faced the elements with no better protection in any distant expedition. That those who sailed in her were to some extent careful of themselves is accidentally certain. Among the stores was a plank with crossbars nailed upon it, meant evidently for landing on a beach. One of our men, who was quick at inferences, exclaimed at once: 'These fellows must have worn shoes and stockings. If they had been barelegged they would have jumped overboard and would not have wanted a landing-plank.'

I conclude, therefore, that she was not the kind of vessel of which the summer squadrons were composed that came down our English Channel, but that she was intended either for the fjords only, or for the narrow waters between Norway and Sweden and Denmark at the mouth of the Baltic. Her rig must have been precisely what we had been lately seeing on the Sogne or Hardanger; a single large sail on a square yard fit for running before the wind, or with the wind slightly on the quarter, but useless at any closer point. The rudder hung over the side a few feet from the stern, a heavy oar with a broad blade and a short handle, shaped so exactly like the rudders of the Roman vessels on Trajan's Column, that the Norsemen, it is likely, had seen the pattern somewhere and copied it.

Such is this strange remnant of the old days which has

suddenly started into life. So vivid is the impression which it creates, that it is almost as if some Sweyn or Harold in his proper person had come back among us from the grave. If we were actually to see such a man we should be less conscious perhaps of our personal superiority than we are apt to imagine. A law of compensation follows us through our intellectual and mechanical progress. The race collectively knows and can execute immeasurably greater things than the Norsemen. Individually they may have been as ready and intelligent as ourselves. The shipwright certainly who laid the lines of the Viking's galley would have something to teach as well as to learn in the yard of a modern yacht builder.

But enough now of Norway. Our time was out; our tour was over; we seated ourselves once more on our wishing carpet, and desired to be at Cowes; we were transported thither with the care and almost the speed with which the genius of the lamp transported the palace of Aladdin; and we felt that we had one superiority at least which the Viking would have envied us.

NORWAY ONCE MORE

When I published two years ago a sketch of a summer holiday in the Norway fjords I supposed that I had seen my last of Norse mountains and lakes, and bönder farms, and that this little record would be all which would remain to me of a time which was so delightful in the enjoyment. The poor 'Severn,' which in 1881 was our floating home, now lies among the krakens at the bottom of the North Sea, or ground to pieces by the teeth of the rocks which one treacherous July morning seized and devoured her. Faithfully the poor yacht had done her duty, bearing us from lake to lake and wonder to wonder, like Prince Ahmed's enchanted carpet. She had been cut off in her youth, before her engines had rusted or screw-shaft cracked. She had ended in honour, and had not been left to rot away ingloriously or subside into tug or tender.

Dead, however, as was the 'Severn's' body, the soul or idea of her was not dead, but in another year had revived again, and gathered a second body about it, more beautiful than the first. In spite of Destiny, her owner persevered in his resolution to penetrate again those virgin inlets, which are yet unhaunted by tourists; to fish again in those waters where the trout are still *feræ naturæ*, unreared in breeding ponds, and unwatched by gamekeepers. He invited me to be once more his companion, and here, in consequence, is a second record of our wanderings, set idly down for my own pleasure. In one sense the whole experience was new, for in 1881 winter stayed to spend the

summer in Norway, and when it did not rain it snowed. In 1884, for half July at least, we were treated to sky and mountain which were dazzling in their brilliancy, and to the tropical temperature of which we had read in guide-books, hitherto with most imperfect belief. But besides, I have actual novelties (three at least) which deserve to be each in some way related—one an incident instructive to English visitors in those parts, one a freak of nature in a landscape, the third a small idyllic figure of Norwegian life. If I can do justice to these, or even to either of them, I flatter myself that I shall not be reproached with being tedious. They will come in their places, and I will note each as I arrive at it.

We were going to amuse ourselves—to fish, perhaps, in the first instance, but not entirely to fish. We had no river of our own. The best salmon streams were all let, and we had to depend on the hospitality of the native proprietors. And of the brown trout, which are so large and so abundant in the inland waters, there are none in those which communicate with the fjords, for they are eaten up by their large relations from the sea, which annually spend the autumn there. We meant to loiter at our pleasure among the large estuaries while the woods were still green and the midnight sun was still shining on the snow peaks; to anchor where we could find bottom, which in those long water-filled crevasses is usually out of cable reach; in the way of fishing, to take what might offer itself, and be as happy with a little as with much. Our party was small—our host, myself and my son A., who had just done with the University, and had his first acquaintance to make with the Salmonidæ.

We steamed out of Harwich in the first grey of morning on June 27. The engines waking into life, and the rattling of the anchor chains, disturbed our dreams; but we sank

to sleep again under the even pulsation of the screw. When we came on deck we were far out in the North Sea, the water shining like oil, the engines going a hundred to the minute, our head pointing as on our first expedition to Udsire Light, 500 miles NN.E. of us, and the yacht rushing steadily on at an accurate nine knots. Yacht life is active idleness—we have nothing to do, and we do it. Vessels come in sight and pass out of it. We examine them with our binoculars, ascertain what they are and whither they are bound. We note the water, and judge the depth of it by the colour. We have the chart before us; we take our observations, and prick down our position upon it with a precision which can be measured by yards. We lie on sofas and read novels; I read a translation, in MS., which our entertainer himself was just completing, of a Norse novel, a story of an old rough sea captain who in an ill day for himself fell among the Methodists, had his tough heart nearly broken by them, and recovered only his wits and his native strength of soul when his life was leaving his body. When we tire of our studies we overhaul our fishing tackle, knot casting lines, and splice new traces. Our host himself is an experienced fisherman. His skill in this department is inherited. He tells us a story of his great-grandfather, who, when he could walk no longer, for gout and rheumatism, fished from the back of a steady old cart horse, and had the mane and tail of his charger shaved off to prevent his flies from catching in them.

At midday we see a smack ahead of us making signals. She lowers a boat. We stop our engines and the boat comes alongside, with three as choice specimens of English sea ruffians as eye had ever rested on. They had mackerel to dispose of. They wanted to exchange their mackerel for schnapps. They would not take money. It was to be *spirits* or no trade. They looked already so soaked with

spirits that a gallon of alcohol might have been distilled out of the blood of either of them. They had a boy with them with a bright innocent laughing face. Poor little fellow, flung by the fates into such companionship! They got no schnapps from us, and we got no mackerel. They rowed back, and probably, before the day was out, fell in with less scrupulous passers-by.

Our yacht is proud of her punctuality. We know our speed and we know our distance each within a decimal fraction. We had sent word that we should reach Bergen at 3 o'clock on Sunday afternoon. At the mouth of the fjord which leads up to the great emporium of the fish trade we were five minutes before our time, but the error was accounted for by three hours of a favourable tide. As we passed in we saw the glassy swell combing over the rock where the 'Severn' lies buried. On that fatal morning it so happened that the sea was absolutely still; the treacherous surface was unbroken even by a line of foam, and she had rushed blindly upon her fate. We do as the wise men bid us do, waste no time in mourning over the unalterable past. We were not wrecked this time. In a few minutes we were flying up the low deep narrow channels between the islands which fringe the western side of the Scandinavian peninsula. The smallest boats traverse these natural roads without danger from wind or wave; the largest, when the entrance is once passed, fear nothing from rock or shoal, the few dangerous spots being faithfully marked by perches. Instead of fog and mist and rain, with which Norway had last welcomed us, we saw it now under the softest, bluest, calmest summer sky. Snow was still visible on the high interior ranges, but in patches which were fast dissolving, the green farmsteads and woods and red-roofed houses gleaming as if we were in a land of eternal sunshine. In two hours we were at Bergen, the

City of Hills. Twice I had been there before. I had studied its markets and its museums, and I thought I knew what it was like. But Bergen itself I had never seen till now. The roof of cloud which had lain half down the mountain had now lifted off. As it was Sunday the ship-yards were silent. The harbour was dotted over with boats, with smart young ladies in bright dresses and with coloured parasols. Steam-launches rushed to and fro. The merchants' villas shone white among the elms and limes. Brigs and schooners were resting at their anchors. Even the huge and hideous Hull steamers suggested life and prosperous energy. 'Have you many rich people here?' I asked of a citizen who came on board. 'Not rich,' he said, 'but plenty who can have everything they wish for.' In Norway too they have at last caught the plague of politics. Parties run high, and Bergen is for progress and Radicalism: but Radicals there, as the same gentleman explained to me, would be called Conservatives in England; they want ministers responsible to the Storthing, economy in the Government, and stricter adherence to the lines of the Constitution—that is all. We landed and heard the Lutheran evening service at the cathedral, which has been lately repaired—the wave of church restoration having spread even to Norway.

We gave one clear day to Bergen, and on July 2, with pilot on board, we lifted anchor and sped away through the inland channels up north to the Sogne Fjord. We had no clear route laid out for us. Our object, as before, was to find quiet nooks or corners where we could stay as long as we pleased, with the yacht for quarters, go ashore, fish, botanise, geologise, and make acquaintance with the natives and their ways. The Sogne runs up into the heart of the Giant Mountains—the home of the Trolls and Jotuns; the shores on either side rising sheer out of the narrow

channel; the great glaciers, showing between the rents of the crags, four thousand feet above us, pouring out their torrents of melted ice, and in such sultry weather as we were then experiencing tinting the lakes with blue. Our Bergen friends had marked out a few places which they thought might answer for us, and we tried them one after the other. We saw scenery of infinite variety—now among precipices so vast that the yacht seemed dwarfed into a cock-boat; now in sunny bays with softer outlines, where the moraines, left by the ice, were covered with thriving homesteads, pretty villages with white church and manse and rounded pine woods. There, for the most part, are the homes of the Norway peasantry. Eleven-twelfths of the whole surface of the country is rock or glacier or forest, uncultivated, uninhabitable by living creature, brute or human. But the Norwegian makes the most of the stinted gifts which Nature has allowed him. Wherever there is a rood of soil which will feed cattle or grow an oat-crop, there his hand is busy. If he cannot live there, he carries over his sheep and cows in his boats to feed. On the ancient lake-bottoms, formed when the fjords were filled with ice, and left dry when the water fell, there are tracts of land which would be called rich and beautiful in any country in the world. In such spots, and in such weather, we might well be tempted to linger! Tourists make long journeys to see Windermere or Loch Katrine. We had Windermere and Loch Katrine ten times magnified at every turn of the winding Sogne—we could choose as we pleased between desolate grandeur and the gentler homes of industry and human life.

Any one of these places might have suited us had we been obliged to stay there, but we had free choice to go anywhere, and we wanted all the various charms combined. We wanted a good harbour. We wanted trout or salmon

for ourselves, and sea-fish for the crew, fresh meat being hard to come by. At one place we were promised a sheep, if the bears had not eaten it. I believe in that instance we did get the sheep, being a lean, scraggy thing which the bears had despised; but we had many mouths to feed, and the larder could not be left to chance. The flowers everywhere were most beautiful; the wild roses, which in 1881 had been checked by the cold, were still short-lived, but the fullest, reddest, and most abundant that I had ever seen. The long daylight intensifies the colours. The meadows were enamelled with harebells. On the moist rocks on the lake sides grew gigantic saxifrages, pure white, eighteen inches high. On a single stem I counted three hundred blossoms, and they were so hardy that one plant lived in full flower for a fortnight in a glass on our cabin table. There were curious aspects of human life too. One night, July 2—St. John's Day by the old reckoning—as we lay at anchor in a gorge, which from the land must have been inaccessible, we saw a large fire blazing, and figures leaping through the flame. It was the relic of a custom, once wide as the Northern hemisphere, on the festival of the summer solstice, old as the Israelitish prophet who saw the children passed through the fire to Moloch. I observed the same thing forty-three years ago in the market-place at Killarney. Thousands of years it has survived, down to these late times of ours, in which, like much besides, it will now end—dissolved in the revolutionary acids of scientific civilisation.

These things had their interest, but we were still dissatisfied, and we flew from spot to spot in a way to make the pilot think us maniacs. 'Tout va bien,' said the Paris Terrorist in 1793; 'mais le pain manque.' All was well with us, but fish were wanting; and when we had wasted a week of our month in following the directions of our

acquaintance at Bergen, we decided to lose no more time in exploring, and to make for quarters of which we had ourselves had experience on our first visit. I shall mention no names, for one of these places is a secret of our own, and we do not wish them to become tourist-haunted. No road goes near them, nor ever can, for they are protected on the land side by mountains steeper and vaster than the walls of Rasselas's enchanted valley. But yacht-visitors might reach them, nay, have actually reached, not the one I speak of, but another, leaving an unpleasant taste behind them. I will not extend their opportunities of making Englishmen unpopular.

Well, then, to decide was to execute. A few hours later we found ourselves anchored in a landlocked bay which I will call for convenience' sake Bruysdal. There are fifty Bruysdals in Norway, and this is *not* one of them. That is all which I need say. It forms the head of a deep inlet, well stocked with dabs and haddock, and whiting, and wolf-fish and other monsters. The landscape is at once grand and gentle; mighty snow-capped mountains cleft into gorges so deep and dark that the sun, save in the height of summer, can never look into them, while on the immediate shores rich meadow-land and grassy undulating hills stretch along the fjord for miles; and from the estate of a prosperous yeoman who rules paternally over his mountain valley, a river runs in near our anchorage, which, after leaving a lake half a mile from the sea, winds down with an ever-flowing stream, through heathery pine-clad slopes and grassy levels covered with wild roses and bilberries. The cuckoos were calling in the woods as we came up; widgeon and wild duck were teaching their young broods to take care of themselves; oyster-catchers flew to and fro—they have no fear of men in a place where no one cares to hurt them. Boats with timber were

passing down the river to a saw-mill opposite the mouth. The lake out of which it flows is two miles long, and ends in a solitary glen, closed in by precipices at the head and on either side. There was beauty here, and grandeur, with food of all kinds, from mutton to bilberries, now ripe and as large as outdoor grapes. Above all, we knew by past experience that sea-trout swarmed in the lake, and trout in the river. The owner's acquaintance we had made before, and the old man, learning from the pilot who we were, came on board at once with his son and the schoolmaster to pay his respects. He himself was hale and stout, age perhaps about sixty; with dark hair which as yet had no grey streaks in it; in manner very much that of a gentleman doing the honours of his country and his dominions with rough dignity. His lake, his river, all that he had, he gave us free use of. The fish had not come up in any number yet, but perhaps there might be some. He accepted a glass of wine, being temperate but not severely abstemious. The younger ones touched nothing of that kind—*Tee-tallers* they called themselves. They were two fine-looking men, but without the father's geniality, and with a slight tinge of self-righteousness. The interest of the moment was a bear which they had just killed among them, having caught him committing murder among the sheep. As the flocks increase, the bears multiply along with them; and the shooting one is an event to be made much of. This particular offender's head came home with us, swinging in the rigging, and looked so savage, grinning there, as much to reduce the pleasure of the crew in going ashore among the bilberries.

At Bruysdal all our desires were at last fulfilled. The steward could get his milk and mutton. The sea fish swarmed. The spot itself combined the best beauties of the Norwegian landscapes—wild nature and thriving

human history. In the lake, as our entertainer had said, there were not many fish, but there were enough. The water was as clear as the air. A tropical sun shone fiercely on its windless surface, conditions neither of them especially favourable for salmon-fishing; but, rowing along the shores, on the edge 'between the deep and the shallow,' with our phantom minnows, we caught what satisfied, without surfeiting, the appetite for destruction; salmon-peel, sewin, sea-trout, or whatever we pleased to call them, from three to nine pounds weight, gallant fellows that would make the reel spin and scream. And then the luncheon, never to be forgotten, on biscuits soaked in the ice-cold stream, the purple bilberries, the modest allowance from the whisky flask, and the pipe to follow, in the heather under the shade of a pine-tree or a juniper, surrounded by ferns and flowers of exquisite variety. I should have no good opinion of any man who, in such a scene, had anything left to wish for.

One day there was another bear-hunt. Three sheep had been killed in the night again, in the glen at the head of the lake. The bönder's people turned out, and the cries of the beaters among the crags, and the cowhorns echoing from cliff to cliff, brought back memories of old days, on the middle lake at Killarney; when the Herberts reigned at Mucross, and the bay of the bloodhounds was heard on the hills, and the driven deer would take the water, and meet his end from a rifle bullet, and the huntsman would wind his death-note on the bugle. Beautiful! all that was, and one cannot think of it without regret that it is gone. But it was artificial, not natural. Our Norway bear-hunt was nature and necessity, the genuine chase of a marauding and dangerous animal. This time unfortunately it was not successful. The brown villains had stolen off through a pass in the mountains, and escaped the penalties of their sins.

Settled down as we were in Bruysdal we did not hurry ourselves, and took our pleasure deliberately. One evening after dinner our host and A. went to the lake; I stayed behind, and was rowed about by one of the crew with a fly rod in the mouth of the river. The soft midnight gloaming, the silence broken only by the late call of the cuckoo in the woods, made me careless about the trout, and, after catching four or five, I preferred to talk to my companion. As a seaman he had been all over the world. He had been up the great rivers in the tropics, had seen pythons and alligators there, and was rather disappointed to find no alligators in the fjords. Alligators, I explained to him, would find a difficulty in getting a living there. In the winter they would be frozen into logs, and would be found dead when they thawed again, and on the whole they preferred a warm climate. As the thermometer had been standing at 80° that day in our deck cabin, and was 70° at that moment though it was midnight, my account was clearly unsatisfactory, but he dropped the subject, and from alligators travelled to human beings. He admired his own countrymen, but could not absolutely approve of them. He had seen savages little if at all superior to apes, but nowhere had he fallen in with *men* of any description, who made such brutes of themselves as Englishmen and Scotchmen when the drink was in them. He himself had drunk water only, for fifteen years, and intended to keep to it. I could not but admit that it might be so. Those precious beauties whom we had just seen in the North Sea were illustrations not to be gainsaid.

One difficulty was to know when to go to bed. The sun might set, but the glow lasted till it rose again; and the cool night air was so delicious and so invigorating that to sleep was a waste of our opportunities. That evening when I went to my cabin, I stood looking out through the

port-hole on the pink flushed hills and water, the full moon just rising behind a hollow between the high mountains and pouring a stream of gold upon the fjord. Now would be the time, I thought, if any Nixie would rise out of the water and sing a song to me of the times long ago. It would have been a rash experiment once. The knight who listened to the Nixię's song forgot country, and home, and wife, and child, plunged wildly into the waters, and was borne away in the white arms of the seducing spirit, never to be seen on earth again. But the knight was young—and I, with the blood creeping slowly in my old veins, felt that for my part I could listen safely, and should like for once to hear such a thing. Alas! as I stood at the window there came no Nixie, but the pale figure floated before me of ——, first as she was in her beauty five-and-forty years ago, then dissolving into the still fair, but broken and aged, woman as I had last seen her, fading away out of a life which had blighted the promise of the morning. Her widowed daughter sleeps beside her, having lost first her young husband and then the mother whom she worshipped. The Nixies are silent. The Trolls work unseen among the copper veins in the mountain chasms, and leave unvexed the children of men. Valhalla is a dream, and Balder has become a solar myth: but ghosts still haunt old eyes which have seen so many human creatures flit across the stage, play their parts, sad or joyful, and vanish as they came.

We stayed a whole week at Bruysdal. There was another spot which we knew of, as wild, as inaccessible, and as fertile, when we tried it last, in the desired sea-trout; and besides sea-trout there were char—not miserable little things like those that are caught in Derwentwater and Crummock, but solid two and three pounders that would fight for their lives like gentlemen.

Across the mountain to Elversdale (that, again, is not

the right name) an eagle might fly in half an hour, but he would fly over sheets of glacier and peak and ridges six thousand feet high. In fact, for human feet there was no road from Bruysdal thither, and the way round by water was nearly a hundred miles. But what were a hundred miles to the fiery dragon in the yacht's engines? All he asks for is a ton or two of coal, and he thinks as little of taking you a hundred miles as you think yourself of an afternoon walk. We had the ship's washing, too, to pick up on the way, and, besides the washing, the letters and newspapers which had been accumulating for a fortnight—something to amuse us in the few hours which would be required for our transportation. After a week or two's absence from London one finds oneself strangely indifferent to what seems so important when one is in the middle of it. Speeches in Parliament remind one of the scuffling of kites and crows which Milton talks of. On this occasion, however, we had all of us a certain curiosity to hear what had become of the Franchise Bill, especially as our host is a sound hereditary Liberal, sounder and stauncher a great deal than I am, and had duly paired on the Government side before he sailed. We bore the news, when it reached us, with extraordinary equanimity. Our appetite for luncheon was not affected. The crew did not mutiny, though three-fourths of them must have been among the two millions expectant of votes. For my own particular, I was conscious of pleasure greater than I had ever expected to receive from any political incident in the remainder of my life. In the first place, it is always agreeable to see men behave courageously. The Peers had refused to walk this time through Coventry with halters about their necks. In the next, if they persevered, it might, one way or another, bring another sham to an end. The House of Lords had seemed to be something, and they were becoming a *nothing*.

The English Sovereign, too, is in a position not altogether befitting a human being with an immortal soul. No man or woman ought to be forced to say this or that, to profess to approve of what he or she detests, in obedience to majorities in the House of Commons. Some day, perhaps, an English Sovereign will be found to say: 'If you want an ornamental marionette at the top of you, to dance at your bidding, you must find some one else. I, for one, decline to figure any longer in that character. I will be a reality, or I will not be at all.' In constitutional countries those who hold high offices do tend to drift into a similar marionette condition. A dean and chapter who receive a mandate to choose A. B. as their bishop, who invite divine assistance to help them to elect a fit person, and then duly appoint the said A. B., they too are not to be envied. Sovereigns and high persons of all kinds in such situations are idols set up in high places, with the form of dignity and without the power; and if we must have idols they should be wood or stone, or gutta-percha, as more flexible, not human creatures, with blood running in the veins of them. I had been very sorry to see the English peers, ostensibly the flower of the whole nation, lapsing gradually into a similar gilded degradation, the lay lords sinking to the level of the spiritual, and by the wise to be mentioned only with a smile. They had at last stood fast, though, alas, it was only for a time. They had recovered the respect of all honest men in doing so, and seemed on the way to become honest men themselves again in one shape or another, and not despised humbugs.

I have high honour for the Peers; I think them an excellent institution, political and social, but one must draw a line somewhere, and I draw one at dukes. From their cradle upwards all persons, things, circumstances, combine to hide from dukes that they are mortal, subject

to limitations like the rest of us. A duke, at least an English duke, though he may be called a peer, yet is a peer only by courtesy. He has no social equal. He is at the summit of the world, and has no dignity beyond his own to which he can aspire. He grows up in possession of everything which the rest of mankind are striving after. In his own immediate surroundings, on his vast estates, among his multitudinous dependents, he has only to will to be obeyed. When he goes out among his fellow-creatures, they bow before so great a presence with instinctive deference. In him, offences are venial which would be fatal to an ordinary man. The earth, so far as he is able to know anything of it, is a place where others have to struggle, but where he has only to desire. To do without what at any moment he happens to wish for, which moralists consider so important a part of education, is a form of discipline denied to a duke from his cradle, and if the moralists are right he is so much the worse for the want of it.

I think we could do without dukes. That is the only reform which I wish for in the Upper House. At any rate, they are over large figures for a quiet Norwegian valley. 'There came three Dukes a-riding.'[1] Several Dukes have looked in at Elversdale of late years in their floating palaces. They have gone for sport there, as in fact we were doing ourselves, and it is hard to say that they had not as good a right as we had. But the Norse proprietors, at least some of them, are Republicans, and are not altogether pleased to see these lordly English looking in upon their quiet homes. The shores of the fjord, the rivers, the lakes, are their property. They are liberal and hospitable; the land they live in is their own; but they are courteous and gracious, and have been willing hitherto to allow their visitors all fair opportunities of

[1] Neither of these was the good duke alluded to at page 274.

entertaining themselves. They are aware, however (it cannot be a secret to them), that if a Norwegian, or any stranger, American, French, or German, travelling without introduction in Scotland, were to ask for a day's sporting in a preserved forest or salmon river, he would not only be refused, but would be so refused as to make him feel that his request was an impertinence. The Lord of the soil in Norway perhaps may occasionally ask himself why he should be expected to be more liberal. His salmon and trout are an important part of his winter provision. He nets them, salts and stores them for the long nights and short days, when the lakes are frozen, and the valleys are full of snow, and there is no food for man or beast, save what is laid up in summer. Why should he give it away?

There are two rivers in Elversdale and two sets of lakes, the respective valleys meeting at the head of the fjord, where on a vast and prettily-wooded moraine there stands, as usual, a white church, the steeple of which shows far up along the glens, the scattered peasants gathering thither in their boats on Sundays. Two great owners divide the domain, one of them having the best fishing. It was in one of his lakes close to the fjord that in 1881 we filled our baskets, and now hoped to fill them again. For this lake, at what we considered an unusually high price, we got leave; but we soon found that it had been given us in irony. The sultry weather had melted the edges of the great glacier which we could see from our deck. The ice-water, pouring down in a cataract, tinted the limpid water into a colour like soap-suds, and not a fish would take. Round and round the lake we rowed, with wearisome repetition; nothing came to our minnows. In the boats we sat, tormented, ourselves, by flies such as are seen nowhere but in Norway. There is one as big as a drone, and rather

like one, but with a green head, and a pair of nippers in it that under a magnifying-glass are a wonder to look at. This, I suppose, is the wretch described by 'Three in Norway,' who speak of a fly that takes a piece out of you, and flies to the next rock to eat it. We were tortured, but caught nothing save a few tiny char which ventured out upon the shallows when the monsters were lying torpid. We soon saw how it was. Where we were there was nothing to be done, but two miles up the valley, above the hay meadows and potato fields, was another lake into which no glacier water ran; splendidly rich in char and trout. There flies might torment, but there was at least sport—legitimate, ample, and subject to no disappointment. Thither we applied for leave to go, and (it was perhaps the first time that such a thing ever happened to any Englishman in that country) we met with a flat refusal. The owner was tired of being called upon to provide sport for strangers of whom he knew nothing. He gave no reason; when we pressed for one he answered quietly that the fish were his, and that he preferred to keep them for himself. In our first impatience we anathematised him to ourselves as a brute, but we reflected that he was doing only what every one of us at home in possession of a similar treasure would do as a matter of course. England is more advanced than Norway, but English principles and habits are making way there; that is all. This is the first of my three novelties.

By the proprietor of the other glen and the other lakes we were entertained more graciously. He remembered us. He and his family had visited the drowned yacht. His boys had been fed with sugar-plums, his daughters had been presented with books and coloured prints, which still hung about his farmhouse. His waters were not the best; but the scenery about them was at any rate most beautiful,

and river, lakes, boats, all that he had, was placed at our disposal. Three lovely days we spent there—rocks and mountains, trees and cataracts, the belts of forest, and the high peaks above them soaring up into the eternal blue. These were our surroundings, changing their appearance every hour as the shadows shifted with the moving sun. The rare trout rose at the fly, the rarer salmon-trout ran at the phantoms at distant intervals. In the hot midday we would land and seek shade from nut bush or alder. The ice-cold rivulets trickled down out of the far-off snow. The cuckoos called in the woods. The wild roses clustered round us, crimson buds and pale pink flowers shining against the luxuriant green of the leaves. The wild campanulas hung their delicate heads along the shores, fairest and daintiest of all the wild flowers of nature, like pieces of the azure heaven itself shaped into those cups and bells. The bilberry clustered among the rocks, hanging out its purple fruit to us to gather as we sat. All this was perfectly delightful, and it was only the brutal part of our souls that remained a little discontented because we had not fish enough, and sighed for the yet more perfect Eden from which we were excluded.

Sunday came, and it was very pretty to see, on the evening before and in the early morning, the boats streaming up the fjord and down from the inland lakes. One boat passed the yacht, rowed by ten stalwart young women, who handled their oars like Saltash fishwives. With a population so scattered, a single priest has two or more churches to attend to at considerable distances, pastors being appointed according to the numbers of the flock, and not the area they occupy. Thus at Elversdale there was a regular service only on alternate Sundays, and this Sunday it was not Elversdale's turn. But there was a Samling—a gathering for catechising and prayer—at our bönder's

house, where the good man himself, or some itinerant minister, officiated. Several hundreds must have collected, the children being in the largest proportion. The Norse people are quiet, old-fashioned Lutherans, who never read a newspaper, and have never heard of a doubt about the truth of what their fathers believed. When the meeting was over, many of them who were curious to see an English yacht and its occupants came on board. The owner welcomed the elders at the gangway, talked to them in their own tongue, and showed them over the ship. A—— had handfuls of sugar-plums for the little ones. They were plain-featured for the most part, with fair hair and blue eyes—the men in strong homespun broadcloth, the women in black serge, with a bright sash about the waist, and a shawl over the shoulders with bits of modest embroidery at the corners. They were perfectly well-behaved, rational, simple, unself-conscious, a healthy race in mind and body whom it was pleasant to see. I could well understand what the Americans mean when they say that, of all the colonists who migrate to them, the Norse are the best—and many go. Norway is as full as it can hold, and the young swarms who in old days roved out in their pirate-ships over France and England and Ireland now pass peaceably to the Far West.

Our time was slipping away, we had but a few days left. Instead of exploring new regions we agreed to go back once more to Bruysdal, and its trout, and its bears. We knew that there we should be welcome again. And at Elversdale, too, we were leaving friends. Even the stern old fellow who had been so sulky might have opened his arms if we had stayed a little longer. But we did not put him to the test. The evening before we sailed, our landlord came to take leave, bringing his wife with him, a sturdy little woman with a lady's manners, under a rough costume.

He was presented with a few pounds of best Scotch oatmeal, a tin of coffee for his old mother, and a few other delicacies in true Homeric style. He in turn came next morning at daybreak, as the anchor was coming up, with a fresh-run salmon, which he had just taken out of his trammels. We parted with warm hopes expressed that we might one day meet again; and the next quiet Englishman who goes thither will find all the waters open to him as freely as they used to be.

Yacht life gives ample leisure. I had employed part of mine in making sketches. One laughs at one's extraordinary performances a day or two after one has completed them. Yet the attempt is worth making. It teaches one to admire less grudgingly the work of real artists who have conquered the difficulties. Books are less trying to vanity, for one is producing nothing of one's own, and submitting only to be interested or amused, if the author can succeed in either. One's appetite is generally good on these occasions, and one can devour anything; but in the pure primitive element of sea, and mountains, and unprogressive peasantry I had become somehow fastidious. I tried a dozen novels one after the other without success; at last, perhaps the morning we left Elversdale, I found on the library shelves 'Le Père Goriot.' I had read a certain quantity of 'Balzac' at other times, in deference to the high opinion entertained of him. N——, a fellow of Oriel and once member for Oxford, I remembered insisting to me that there was more knowledge of human nature in 'Balzac' than in Shakespeare. I had myself observed in the famous novelist a knowledge of a certain kind of human nature which Shakespeare let alone—a nature in which healthy vigour had been corrupted into a caricature by highly seasoned artificial civilisation. Hothouse plants, in which the flowers had lost their grace of form and

natural beauty, and had gained instead a poison-loaded and perfumed luxuriance, did not exist in Shakespeare's time, and if they had they would probably not have interested him. However, I had not read 'Le Père Goriot,' and as I had been assured that it was the finest of Balzac's works, I sat down to it and deliberately read it through. My first impulse after it was over was to plunge into the sea to wash myself. As we were going ten knots, there were objections to this method of ablution, but I felt that I had been in abominable company. The book seemed to be the very worst ever written by a clever man. But it, and N——'s reference to Shakespeare, led me into a train of reflections. Le Père Goriot, like King Lear, has two daughters. Like Lear, he strips himself of his own fortune to provide for them in a distinguished manner. He is left to poverty and misery, while his daughters live in splendour. Why is Lear so grand? Why is Le Père Goriot detestable? In the first place, all the company in Balzac are bad. Le Père Goriot is so wrapped up in his delightful children, that their very vices charm him, and their scented boudoirs seem a kind of Paradise. Lear, in the first scene of the play, acts and talks like an idiot, but still an idiot with a moral soul in him. Take Lear's own noble nature from him, take Kent away, and Edgar, and the fool, and Cordelia—and the actors in the play, it must be admitted, are abominable specimens of humanity—yet even so, leaving the story as it might have been if Marlowe had written it instead of Shakespeare, Goneril and Regan would still have been terrible, while the Paris dames of fashion are merely loathsome. What is the explanation of the difference? Partly, I suppose, it arises from the comparative intellectual stature of the two sets of women. Strong natures and weak may be equally wicked. The strong are interesting, because they have daring and force. You fear

them as you fear panthers and tigers. You hate, but you admire. M. Balzac's heroines have no intellectual nature at all. They are female swine out of Circe's sty; as selfish, as unscrupulous as any daughter of Adam could conveniently be, but soft, and corrupt, and cowardly, and sensual; so base and low that it would be a compliment to call them devils. I object to being brought into the society of people in a book whom I would shut my eyes rather than see in real life. Goneril and Regan would be worth looking at in a cage in the Zoological Gardens. One would have no curiosity to stare at a couple of dames caught out of Coventry Street or the Quadrant. From Shakespeare to Balzac, from the 16th century to the 19th, we have been progressing to considerable purpose. If the state of literature remains as it has hitherto been, the measure of our moral condition, Europe has been going ahead with a vengeance. I put out the taste of 'Le Père Goriot' with 'Persuasion.' Afterwards I found a book really worth reading, with the uninviting title of 'Adventures in Sport and War,' the author of it a young Marquis de Compiègne, a ruined representative of the old French noblesse, who appears first as a penniless adventurer seeking his fortune in America as a bird-stuffer, and tempted by an advertisement into the swamps of Florida in search of specimens, a beggarly experience, yet told with *naïveté* and simplicity, truth and honour surviving by the side of absolute helplessness. Afterwards we find our Marquis in France again, fighting as a private in the war with Germany, and taken prisoner at Sedan; and again in the campaign against the Commune, at the taking of Paris, and the burning of the Tuileries—a tragic picture, drawn, too, with the entire unconsciousness of the condition to which Balzac, Madame Sand, and the rest of the fraternity had dragged down the French nation.

But by this time we are back in Bruysdal, and I come now to the second of my three incidents in which the reader was to be interested—a specimen of what Norway can do when put upon its mettle in the way of landscape effect. The weather had changed. When we left, the temperature in our deck cabin was 80°. The mercury in our barometer stood at 30 and 3-10ths. When we returned the pressure had relaxed to 29, while the temperature had fallen nearly forty degrees. Our light flannels had gone back to the drawers, and the thickest woollens would hardly keep out the cold. The rain was falling as in a universal shower bath, lashing into bubbles the surface of the fjord. The cataracts were roaring down; the river was in a flood, the shore and the trees dimly visible through the descending torrent. Here, if ever, was a fishing day for those who were not afraid of being dissolved like sugar. Our host challenged us to venture, and we were ashamed to hesitate. In huge boots and waterproof and oilskin hats (may the wretch who made my mackintosh for me in London be sent to the unpleasant place and punished appropriately) we were rowed up into the lake, sent out our spinners, and were soon in desperate battle each with our respective monster, half-blinded by wind and rain. On days like this the largest fish roam the waters like hungry pike. We had two hours of it. Flesh and blood could stand no more. We made one circuit of the lake; neither we nor the boatmen could face a second, and we went home with our spoils. Enough said about that. Now for my landscape. On one side of Bruysdal the mountains rise from the water in a series of precipices to the snow-line, and are broken into deep wooded gorges. Down these the cataracts were raging; very fine in their way, but with nothing uncommon about them. The other side of the valley is formed quite differently. A long broad plateau of smooth unbroken rock ascends at a low

gradient for miles, reaching eventually an equal altitude, and losing itself among the clouds. At the hollow where the lake lies, this plateau is as if broken sharply off, ending in an overhanging precipice perhaps a mile long, and from 300 to 400 feet high; higher it may be, for the scale of everything is gigantic, and the eye often underrates what it sees. Over the whole wide upper area the rain had been falling for hours with the fury of a tropical thunder shower. There being no hollows or inequalities to collect the water, and neither grass nor forest to absorb the flood, it ran straight down over the smooth slopes in an even shallow stream. On reaching the cliffs it fell over and scattered into spray, and there it seemed to hang extended over a mile of perpendicular rock, like a delicately transparent lace veil undulating in the eddies of the wind. It was a sight to be seen once and never to be forgotten. Water is a strange Proteus—now transparent as air, now a mirror, now rippled and the colour of the sky. It falls in foam in the torrent. It is level as quicksilver, or it is broken into waves of infinite variety. It is ice, it is snow, it is rain, it is fog and cloud, to say nothing of the shapes it takes in organic substances. But never did I see it play so singular a part as when floating to and fro in airy drapery, with the black wet rock showing like a ghost behind it. The whole valley was dim with the falling rain, the far mountains invisible in mist, the near rocks and trees drenched and dripping. Some artist of the Grosvenor Gallery might make a picture of the place as a part of Hades, and people it with moist spirits.

In honour of our endurance and our success, and to put us in heart again for the next day, we had a bottle of champagne at dinner, I in silence drinking to myself the health of the House of Lords in general as well as that of our entertainer. And now I have only to relate the dis-

grace which befell myself when the next day came, to end what I have to say about our fishing. I had a precious phantom minnow, a large one which had come victorious out of that day's conflicts. Before putting it on again my eye was caught by the frayed look of the gut trace. It seêmed strong when I tried it; but perhaps I wished to save myself trouble, and treated it as Don Quixote treated his helmet the second time. Well, we started in our boat again, a hundred yards below the point where the river leaves the lake. We were rowing up the strong stream, I carelessly letting out my line, and in that place expecting nothing, when there came a crash; the slack line was entangled round the reel, which could not run, the rod bent double from the combined weight of some sea-trout huger than usual and the rapid water. Alas! in a moment the rod had straightened again, and sea-trout, phantom, and my own reputation as a fisherman were gone together. I could not get over it, and the sport had lost its charm. We caught several fish afterwards, and my son got one nearly ten pounds weight. I was glad for him, but for myself the spirit had gone out of me. In the afternoon, the river being in high order, we put our lighter rods together to try the pools with salmon flies. D—— caught a salmon-peel of four pounds weight. I had another smaller one; afterwards scrambling along some steep slippery rocks I reached a promising-looking run, and, letting my fly go down over it, I rose a true salmon and a big one. I drew back and changed my fly. A salmon, under such conditions, will almost always come again if you wait a minute or two and throw him a new temptation. I was looking to be consoled for my morning's misfortune, when at the moment a native boat dashed over the spot loaded with timber. My salmon vanished into space, and I saw him no more. I ought to have been

disgusted. I discovered myself reflecting instead, that after all the salmon was better off as he was, and I no worse—a state of mind unpermitted to a fisherman, and implying that my connection with the trade, now more than fifty years old, may be coming to an end. Alas, that all things do come to an end! Life itself runs to an end. Our Norway holiday was running to an end, though the prettiest part of it was still to come. We had to look in at Bergen again on our way home to pick up letters, &c. Bergen was nearly 200 miles from us, and to break the distance we were to anchor somewhere about half-way. Our last day at Bruysdal was a Sunday again. We were popular there, and on Sunday evening we had a small fleet about us, with boys and girls and music. An ingenious lad had fitted a screw propeller of his own making to his boat, which he worked with a crank. With this, and the Norwegian flag flying, he careered round and round the yacht at a most respectable pace, the lads and lasses following in their Sunday dresses, like the nymphs and Tritons after Neptune's car. A boat came on board us with two men in her whom we did not know. They had a sick relation at home, and wanted medicine. We gave them what we had. They innocently asked how much they were to pay, bringing out their pocket-books, and were perplexed when D—— laughed and told them '*nothing*.' They doubted, perhaps, the efficacy of the remedies. Anyhow they were gratified. The Bruysdal community fired a gun when we steamed away next day, and saluted us with their flag from the school-house; there too we shall find a welcome if we ever return: meanwhile we were gone, for the present to see it no more.

In the evening we turned into a spot which our pilot knew of as a quiet anchorage, which I will call Orlestrund. We were by this time far away from the mountains. We found

ourselves in a soft landlocked bay, with green meadows and low softly-wooded hills; the air was sweet with the scent of the new-mown hay; there were half a dozen farmhouses, which seemed to share between them the richly-cultivated and smiling soil. A church stood conspicuous near the shore; on one side of it was what seemed to be a school; on the other, among high trees, we saw the roof and chimneys of the pastor's house, a respectable and even superior-looking residence. Work for the day was over when we let fall our anchor. It was about eight o'clock, a lovely summer evening, with three hours of subdued daylight remaining. The boys and young men, dismissed from the fields, were scattered about the bay in boats catching haddock and whiting. Looking round the pretty scene we saw a group outside the gate of the manse, which was evidently the pastor and his family, himself an elderly gentleman, his wife, and six young ones, descending from a girl of perhaps sixteen to little ones just able to take care of themselves. They were examining the yacht, and it was easy to see what happened. The old couple, with the three youngest children, turned in to their gate and disappeared. The others, the eldest girl and two brothers, had got leave to go out in the boat and look at us, for they flew along the shore to their boat-house, and presently came out on the fjord. Not wishing to seem too curious they lingered awhile with their lines and caught four or five haddock. They then gradually drew nearer, the girl rowing, her two brothers in the stern. D—— beckoned to them to come closer, and then, in Norse, invited them on board. They were roughly dressed, not better perhaps than the children of the peasantry, but their looks were refined, their manner modest and simple, free alike from shyness and forwardness. The daughter spoke for the rest. She was tall for her years, with large eyes, a slight but strong

figure, and features almost handsome. D—— took her round the ship. She moved gracefully, answered questions and asked them with as much ease as if she had been among friends and relations. She kept her young brothers in order by a word, and in short behaved with a composure which would have been surprising in any girl of such an age when thrown suddenly among strangers. She asked if we had ladies on board, and seemed disappointed, but not the least disturbed, when we told her that there were only ourselves. Presently she began to speak English, with a fair accent too, better than most French or Germans ever arrive at. We asked her if she had been in England. She had never been away from Orlestrund. She had taught herself English, she said quite simply, 'from book.' D—— accuses her of having asked him if he could speak Norse, after he had been talking in that language to her for ten minutes. I insisted, with no knowledge of the language myself, but merely drawing my inference from the nature of things, that a creature of such fine behaviour could not have put it as question, but must have observed, 'And you too speak Norse!' We asked her name. She was called Theresa. Theresa certainly, but I could not catch the surname with entire clearness. She wished to bring her father to see us. We would gladly have seen both the father and the mother who in such a spot had contrived to rear so singular a product. She gathered up her two boys, sprang into her skiff, seized the oars, and shot away over the water. We saw her land and vanish into the shrubbery. In a few minutes she appeared again, but only with a little sister this time. She came to tell us that her father could not leave his house at so late an hour. He was sorry he could not use the opportunity of making our acquaintance. He desired to know who we were. D—— wrote his [illegible] and sent it by her. She went down the gang-

way again, and joined her sister, who had hid herself in her shawl in timid modesty.

They glided off into the gloaming, and we saw them no more. Very pretty, I thought, this Norse girl, so innocent, so self-possessed, who seemed in that lonely spot, surrounded only by peasants, to have educated herself into a character so graceful. If our modern schools, with competition and examinations, and the rights of woman, and progress of civilisation, and the rest of it, turn out women as good and as intelligent as this young lassie, they will do better than I, for one, expect of them. Peace be with her, and a happy, useful life at the side of some fit companion! In the wide garden of the world, with its hotbed luxuriance and feverish exotics, there will be one nook at any rate where nature combined with genuine art will bloom into real beauty.

So ends my brief journal—ends with Theresa, for I can add nothing which will not be poor and trivial after so fair a figure—and, indeed, there is nothing more to say. The next morning we hastened on to Bergen. The afternoon which followed we were out again on the North Sea, which we found this time in angry humour. But the engines made their revolutions accurately. The log gave the speed which was expected, and we made the passage to Harwich again in the exact period which had been predetermined. We were late, indeed, by twelve minutes, after allowing for the difference of longitude, and these minutes lost required to be accounted for. But we recollected that we had stopped precisely that number of minutes on the Dogger Bank to take soundings, and the mystery was perfectly explained. It reminded me of a learned Professor of Oxford, who was engaged on sacred chronology. He told us one night in Common Room that he had the dates of every event complete from the Creation till the present day. He had been

so minutely successful that his calculations were right to twelve hours. These hours had puzzled him till he recollected that when the sun was arrested by Joshua it had stood still for a whole day, exactly the period which he wanted, and the apparent error had only verified his accuracy.

PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
LONDON

00031437

Digitized with financial assistance from

HT Parekh FOUNDATION

An Initiative by HDFC

WITH YOU, RIGHT THROUGH

on 28 December, 2018